M. H. Bannister
Queen's College

THE FRENCH HEROIC NOVEL
1630–1660
NOTE

The original spelling has been retained in quotations from seventeenth-century works, except that 'j' and 'v' have been substituted for consonantal 'i' and 'u' respectively, in accordance with normal practice. Slight modifications have been made to the punctuation where the original is so different from modern practice as to cause confusion.

References to works of more than one volume give the volume and page number, thus: III, 280. In those cases where the pagination is inaccurate, reference is made to the rectified numbering, and the fact that this has been done is mentioned in the footnote.
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part I</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I</td>
<td>The Nature of the Hero</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter II</td>
<td>The Area of Debate</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter III</td>
<td>Prudence and Providence</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter IV</td>
<td>The Passions</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter V</td>
<td>Love and Feminism</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter VI</td>
<td>History and Fiction</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part II</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter VII</td>
<td>The Proto-heroic Novel:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Ariane</em> and <em>L'Histoire celtique</em></td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter VIII</td>
<td><em>Polexandre</em></td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter IX</td>
<td><em>Ibrahim</em></td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter X</td>
<td><em>Cassandre</em></td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter XI</td>
<td><em>Cléopâtre</em></td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter XII</td>
<td><em>Le Grand Cyrus</em></td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part III</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter XIII</td>
<td>Decline</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conclusion</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bibliography</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abstract</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The moral values current in France during the first half of the seventeenth century have been subjected during recent years to a close scrutiny by scholars, and something of the complexity of the attitudes characteristic of that time has been revealed. In 1948, in a seminal study, Bénichou identified three major points of view in what he called the 'débat ... sur l'excellence ou la médiocrité de la nature humaine', the first of which, the morale héroïque, 'ouvre un passage de la nature à la grandeur, et en définit les conditions.' He associated it with the aspirations and class-myth of the noblesse d'épée who rejected any obligations or duties other than those towards themselves. The exaltation of the individual ego and the drive towards jouissance, whether immediate or delayed in the interests of greater satisfaction at a later stage, were the central elements in an ethic of self-fulfilment:

Leur seul devoir est d'être dignes d'eux-mêmes, de porter assez haut leurs visées, et de donner aux petits des exemples suffisamment édifiants de leur grandeur. Ils se doivent de dédaigner les ambitions réduites, de mépriser tout ce que le vulgaire peut atteindre comme eux. Ainsi l'orgueil double, juge, accrédite tous leurs appétits.²

Nadal's study of the concept of love in Corneille's plays, published in the same year as Morales du Grand Siècle, defined the same ethic. The urge to heroism was founded, he argued, on an absolute commitment to self-glorification; gloire was the supreme end to which the will was applied.

2. Id., p. 17.
and took precedence over all other moral considerations. The attempt to transcend human limitations by harnessing the energy inherent in the passions in the cause of sublimity was an aristocratic phenomenon: the élite, 'oubliéeuse des vertus de morale commune et d'orthodoxie religieuse,' saw itself as a superior caste responsible only to its own ideals, beyond the comprehension of the ordinary people.

In 1959, Professor Sutcliffe demonstrated in his study of Guez de Balzac that the heroic ideal could not be entirely attributed to the noblesse d'épée. There were those during the reign of Louis XIII who acknowledged the existence of heroic potential in man, who allowed man his aspirations towards grandeur and accepted the importance of concepts such as noblesse, vertu and gloire, but who saw the need to redefine the nature of the hero in the light of the political circumstances of the day. This was the outlook of 'quantité d'écrivains de l'époque, et notamment ceux qui gravitent dans l'orbite du cardinal de Richelieu.' Literature and politics joined forces to create a new ideal for man, to channel his aspirations towards greatness away from pure self-fulfilment and merge them with the new ethic of the state.

Our knowledge of how the various concepts of heroism manifested themselves in literature has been much enlarged by further studies, some dealing with the wider philosophical implications, such as Levi's French Moralists, others investigating the relationship of individual writers to the heroic ethos. Amongst the latter must be mentioned those of Van Baelen on Rotrou, Sakharoff on playwrights from Garnier to Rotrou and particularly Doubrovsky, Maurens and Stegmann on Corneille. More recently, the symposium held in Strasbourg on 'Héroïsme et création littéraire sous les règnes d'Henri IV

et de Louis XIII' has provided penetrating insights into the fascination exercised over a whole generation by the ideal of the hero, whether embodied in the figure of the military leader, the fictional hero, the peasant rebel or the saint, for the hero could take as many forms as there were aspirations in society. The papers presented at the symposium emphasise how many areas of literature were affected by the search for an incarnation of man's ideals. Indeed, it is true of all the above-mentioned contributions to our understanding of the seventeenth-century system of values that attention has been drawn to an enormous number of works of the time, some of no great intrinsic merit but valuable for the light they shed on the many facets of heroism. Every major literary form reflected an interest in the exceptional being and the qualities which differentiate him from ordinary men. The preoccupation was particularly strong during the twenty years immediately preceding the Fronde when the theatre presented dramatised versions of heroic exploits and figures such as the Prince de Condé were providing material for the panegyrist. During the 1650s a reaction was already being felt and the heroic potential in human nature was being questioned: the 'demolition of the hero' was to follow within a short time.

For much of this period, the novel made its own important contribution to the literature of heroism, producing at the same time some of the greatest successes of the century with the reading public. It therefore offers a method of gauging the extent to which the various concepts of heroism had found acceptance with the literate section of society, for, like the theatre, the novel was dependent on the approbation of a wide public and therefore tended to reflect ideas generally held. It may not include reasoned arguments or philosophical abstractions but it reflects the unconscious responses of a

large number of readers, a point made by Professor Truchet
in his concluding remarks to the Strasbourg symposium:

Il existe certes, pour qui veut cerner le
contenu d'une idéologie ou caractériser les
comportements d'un groupe socio-culturel, des
documents plus sûrs et plus précis que des
romans ou des pièces de théâtre ; mais les
romans et le théâtre expriment en profondeur
la manière dont ces réalités affleurent à la
conscience et s'insèrent dans la vie.12

The popularity of the novel during the period in question
is well attested. Fortin de la Hoguette warned his son, 'Mon
fils, c'est une maladie du temps que les Romans ; ç'a esté
la mienne, ce sera peut-être la tienne.'13 The Bishop of
Belley noted with regret how much they were appreciated by
'tous ceux qui ont inclination à lire, jusques aux enfants,
lesquels on void aussi aspers à devourer des Romans, qu'à
sucer des dragées,'14 and Father Dubosc was concerned that
'on lit plus volontiers les livres qui corrompent les moeurs,
que ceux qui les reglent ; & il y a plus de names, qui apprennent
par coeur les contes des Amadis, que les histoires de la Cour
Sainte.'15 Men of action and men of letters were equally
appreciative. The Prince de Condé read avidly while on cam-
paign; Chapelain's library contained copies of most of the
major novels of his lifetime16; Boileau as a young man read
them 'avec beaucoup d'admiration';17 Corneille and other play-
wrights borrowed plots from them.18

The outstanding success of the early years of the century
was l'Astrée. Martin has identified more than ten editions
of Part I and has estimated that its readers must have been

12. id., p. 356.
13. Testament, ou Conseils fideles d'un bon pere à ses enfans
16. See Searles, Catalogue de tous les livres de feu M. Chapelain
(Stanford, 1912), pp. 70-71.
18. Corneille acknowledged his debt to Juvenel's Dom Pélage in the
Examen de Don sanche d'Aragon. For a list of other plays
derived from novels, see Magendie, Le Roman français au XVIe
numbered in tens of thousands, a remarkable figure for the time. D'Urfé was credited with having given to the novel all those features which made it worthy of esteem. To Scudéry, he was 'le vrai Peintre de l'ame.' Sorel, always ready to mock anything he considered unrealistic, described l'Astrée as 'ouvrage tres-exquis, dont plusieurs aventures sont dans le genre vray-semblable, & les Discours en sont agréables & naturels.' Even Boileau conceded that the work had been supported 'd'une narration également vive et fleurie, de fictions très-ingenieuses et de caractères aussi finement imaginés qu'agréablement variés et bien suivis.'

In view of the enormous vogue for l'Astrée, it is surprising that the pastoral novel did not find more proponents and have a more radical effect on the subsequent development of the novel. It may be, as Magendie has suggested, that the very success of l'Astrée militated against imitators, though there was no shortage of playwrights prepared to borrow plots from d'Urfé. It may be that the pastoral very soon ceased to correspond to the taste of the reading public and that the generation which was to fight in the Thirty Years War had little time for the restraint and delicacy of bergeries.

Whatever the reason, within a few years of the appearance of Part III of l'Astrée in 1619, the last part published in d'Urfé's lifetime, the novel had begun to take a new direction. The 1620s are characterised by novels which substitute for the rather static situations found in l'Astrée a concern for incident and adventure, frequently presented in a disordered

---

22. op. cit., p. 168.
24. It is interesting to note, however, how frequently defenders of inconstancy in the manner of Hylas appear in novels otherwise committed to an ideal of heroic constancy: Palamède in Ariane, Le Marquis françois in Ibrahim, Elgazair in Rolexandré, Démocarez in Bérénice.
way, giving full scope to fantasy and very little place to characterisation. There are few novels of this period with any literary merit, and the re-editions of the Greek romances of Heliodorus and Tatius and the Amadis cycle had no difficulty in maintaining their popularity in the face of this paucity of talent. By the 1640s, however, novels of a new kind had established themselves and were immensely popular with the reading public. They were long, contained a large number of tiroirs and described the martial and amorous adventures of wholly admirable heroes, usually figures taken from history, though the authors permitted themselves a considerable degree of latitude in the depiction of historical incidents. The most successful of these heroic novels, as they came to be called, were Gomberville's Polexandre (1637), La Calprenède's Cassandre (1642–45) and Cléopâtre (1646–57), and Scudéry's Ibrahim (1641) and Le Grand Cyrus (1649–53).

25. Langlois (Le Tombeau des romans, Paris, 1626) mentions only l'Astree and Barclay's Argenis as evidence in his defence of the novel.

26. The editions of these works to which references are made in this thesis are:


d) Ibrahim ou l'Illustre Bassa, 4 vols. (Paris, 1641). Two four-volume editions of Ibrahim were published in 1641 by Sommaville, both in-8°, with identical dedications, privilèges and achevé d'imprimer but from different type settings and with different pagination. In one, the volumes contain Premiere Partie, Suite de la premiere partie, Seconde Partie, Suite de la seconde partie respectively, each part consisting of ten books; in the other, Premiere Partie, Deuxiesme Partie, Troisiesme Partie, Quatresie Partie respectively, each part consisting of five books. References are made to the former edition.

e) Artamene ou le Grand Cyrus, 10 vols. (Paris, 1649–53). References are given as Le Grand Cyrus or Cyrus.

The question of the authorship of the Scudéry novels is likely to remain unresolved. The author of Ibrahim and Cyrus is therefore generally referred to as Scudéry, but for other works Georges and Madeleine de Scudéry are mentioned individually.
Though some of the roots of the heroic novel go back a considerable way, a preoccupation with the kind of individual who excelled in physical combat but who at the same time possessed all the social virtues considered necessary by the society of the day is not really discernible until the beginning of the 1630s. In particular, Desmarets de Saint-Sorlin's *Ariane* (Paris, 1632), Hotman de Latour's *Histoire celtique*, 3 vols. (Paris, 1634) and the early versions of *Roxelandre* (1629 and 1632) indicate a shift in emphasis from a series of adventures loosely connected by one or more characters to the depiction of a special kind of being whose behaviour is shown to be qualitatively superior to that of ordinary men. The adventures in which he is involved are related in order to demonstrate his superiority rather than because of their intrinsic interest. As early as 1624, in his *Endimion*, a short work noted by contemporaries mainly for its references à clef, Gombauld had sought to establish a new method of presentation. He refers in his preface to the 'discours héroïque' which he considers to be a necessary ingredient in a novel and which manifests itself in his text as the expression of idealised aspirations, the striving to reach a level where man is in touch with divinity, for which an elevated tone and diction are required, very different from the straightforward narrative style of the roman d'aventures. Other writers reveal a similar desire to rise above the mere narrating of striking incidents. Boisrobert, for instance, declares that the novelist's aim is to show 'en un plus eminent degré les vertus dont l'histoire nous presente les exemples.' Hotman de Latour, acknowledging the inspiration he has received from Heliodorus, indicates his chief


preoccupation by asserting that Theagenes is not heroic enough.29

The vogue for the long heroic novel depicting the great figures of antiquity reached its peak in the 1640s and 1650s but disappeared abruptly in the 1660s. Scudéry's Almahide (1660-63) and La Calprenède's Karamond (1661-63, completed by Vaumorière in 1670) were the last notable examples before the nouvelle eclipsed it, though many readers still enjoyed Gomberville, La Calprenède and Scudéry and some of the major novels were being republished well into the eighteenth century. However, when Huet defined the novel in terms which were in effect an apology for the heroic novel30, he was already out of date.

The period of the heroic novel thus corresponds broadly with the period when the concept of heroism was exercising the minds and talents of writers in many different genres. It parallels the popularity of heroic tragedy and tragi-comedy in the theatre and the publication of innumerable panegyrics aimed at turning great men into heroes, treatises on the heroic potential in man (and woman), epics and heroic odes. Those who wrote heroic novels very often made a contribution to one of these other genres as well. It is therefore necessary to see the heroic novel as one aspect of the pursuit of a myth. Fiction presented imaginary incarnations of this myth while historians looked to the great men of the past or present as their examples and religious writers offered the saint as its embodiment.

The fortunes of the heroic novel since the seventeenth century have been varied. In the eighteenth century, the major examples were remembered as monuments to the creativity

of an earlier, more robust generation but were felt to lack the subtlety and refinement that had since become characteristic of the novel. The Bibliothèque universelle des romans commends them for 'l'étendue magnifique & l'art des plans ; la grandeur des caractères, l'intérêt des situations, la science vaste & les vérités historiques' and claims that, despite their faults, 'on pourrait encore les proposer comme des sources d'héroïsme, des modèles du grand art, & du sublime dans la composition.' The editor of the Nouvelle bibliothèque de campagne included ten episodes from heroic novels amongst his forty-six extracts, but pointed out that these episodes were buried in 'des productions ingrattes, qu'on ne lit plus, & qu'on a peut-être raison de ne plus lire' : he is scathing about 'le style diffus, lâche, obscur, & souvent emphatique des Scudéri, des Gomberville, des Calprenède, &c.'

Scholars of the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries tended to approach the heroic novel with curiosity but little sympathy. Körting saw it as an unhappy fusion of two elements, the one borrowed from the classical world, the other from Italian and Spanish taste, neither of them suitable for the French genius : inevitably they produced only a poetic monster. Saintsbury's attitude was one of tolerant acceptance. More generously, Morillot was prepared to grant them esteem, though not his full admiration, despite their imperfections.

31. October 1780, I,4-5, 17-18.
32. Nouvelle bibliothèque de campagne, ou Choix d'épisodes intéressans et curieux, tiré des meilleurs romans, tant anciens que nouveaux, 3 vols. (Amsterdam and Paris, 1769), avertissement, v, vi.
33. Geschichte des französischen Romans im XVII Jahrhundert, 3 parts in one volume (Leipzig, 1887), I,307. See his remarks on Gomberville (I,217-8) for an indication of his lack of sympathy for this kind of novel.
It is only really since the publication of Magendie's *Le Roman français au XVIe siècle de l'Astrée au grand Cyrus* 36 that serious critical attention has been paid to the bulk of the novels of the first half of the seventeenth century and that they have escaped from the teleological approach which saw them all in terms of "pre-classicism". Magendie's work revealed how many novels had been produced during this period and suggested a number of angles from which they might be approached. Unfortunately, he did not always do justice to the works he considered because he tended to look for evidence of features which were not intended by the authors, such as historical realism or individualised characters, and sometimes became impatient when he did not find it. Adam reveals something of the same attitude. 37 Quite recently, however, certain authors, particularly Gomberville, have found champions. Coulet declares that 'Gomberville avait le génie du roman. ... Le siècle du surréalisme et du cinéma devrait le réhabiliter.' 38 Kévorkian is even more enthusiastic and praises him unreservedly for his imagination : 'l'auteur de *Polexandre* est l'un des grands romanciers de la littérature française.' 39

The term roman héroïque has been used from an early stage to categorise the novels of the 1630s, 1640s and 1650s. Sorel uses the term in *La Maison des jeux*, dividing the romans héroïques & vray-s semblables into several categories, 'comme des Romans de guerre ou d'aventures amoureuses simplement, des Romans à l'antique ou à la moderne, des Romans qui ne rapportent que les amours des Chevaliers, des Courtisans & des hommes de ville.' 40 In *La Bibliothèque française* he devotes a chapter to the romans héroïques or parfaits, and again in *De la connoissance des bons livres* (1671).

37. op.cit., II,125-730.
However, although the term has been established since the seventeenth century, there has never been any absolute agreement as to which novels should be classed as heroic. Sorel mentions 'Polexandre, Ibrahim, Cyrus, Cassandre, Cleopatre, Mitridate, Clelie, &c.' and elsewhere lists a much larger number extending from Ariane into the 1660s. Lenglet du Fresnoy lists Polexandre, Ibrahim, Cassandre, Cleopatre, Le Grand Cyrus, Scanderberg and Mitridate as heroic novels but, rather surprisingly, includes l'Histoire celtique, Rosane, Péristandre, Antiope, Axiane, Alcide, Polémire and others amongst the romans d'amour. The Bibliothèque universelle des romans, on the other hand, categorises Cassandre and Mitridate as heroic novels and Le Grand Cyrus and Axiane as historical novels but Polexandre and Ibrahim as romans d'amour. Körtting sees the heroic-galant novel emerging with Polexandre, reaching its peak with Cassandre and Cleopatre and declining with Le Grand Cyrus.

Amongst twentieth-century scholars, F.C. Green uses the term 'heroic novel' when referring specifically to La Calprenède and Scudéry; Saintsbury indicates that for him it includes in addition the works of Gomberville. Since the publication of Magendie's Le Roman français, there has been a tendency to define the heroic novel by reference to the historical pretensions of some authors, so that the kind of hero depicted becomes of secondary importance. Magendie himself differentiates between the roman d'aventures and the roman historico-épique. Of forty-one romans d'aventures listed, all but eight were published before 1636; of sixteen romans historico-épiques, all but two were published after 1636. The distinction between the two groups, however, is not so much chronological as formal, the latter being constructed

42. La Bibliothèque française, ed. cit., pp. 183 et seq.
according to the 'prose epic' theory with a historical figure as the hero and avoiding the wilder fantasies of the roman d'aventures, especially the supernatural intrusions. Three works (histoire nègrepontique, Ariane and Polexandre) are listed as transitional since they reveal a concern for verisimilitude and a limited commitment to history without entirely escaping the excesses of earlier novels.  

Adam makes the same basic distinction as Magendie, showing the roman d'aventures developing between 1620 and 1635 (about 30 novels) and falling from favour after 1642. It is characterised by a free use of the imagination with little regard for history (Gomberville is included in this category). Around 1640, the roman d'aventures is succeeded by the roman héroïque, a prose epic based on history and offering a reflection of galant society. Coulet concentrates on the spirit of the novel after l'Astrée rather than its form and its historical pretensions. His definition is broad: 'nous réunissons sous le nom de romans héroïques les romans parus entre 1625 et 1655 environ, qui racontent de grandes actions et décrivent de grands sentiments', and it embraces a large number of authors, including Boisrobert and Logeas. He does, however, make a division between the years 1625-40 when the roman d'aventures predominated, and 1640-55 when the emphasis was on history. Ariane and Polexandre are again mentioned as transitional works.

It can be seen that there is only the broadest consensus as to the nature of the heroic novel. It is unfortunate that the establishing of categories based on the historico-epic theory of the novel current in the seventeenth century has, by drawing undue attention to certain principles of form, created artificial divisions between writers whose fundamental aims and outlook were similar. Cassandre, for example,

47. op.cit., pp. 181-95.
49. op.cit., I, 160.
is nearer to Polexandre in conception than to Clélie, though a division along formal lines would link it with the latter.

For the purposes of this thesis, the heroic novel is defined partly in terms of form and partly in terms of subject-matter. It is a roman à tiroirs, usually published in several volumes, in which the main plot at least recounts the exploits of an admirable figure, frequently a great military leader taken from history, and his love for an equally admirable woman. The adventures of his close companions often make up a proportion of the work. The dates chosen for this study (1630-1660) are not intended to do more than indicate the period during which such novels flourished.

The thesis is primarily an investigation of the nature of the heroic ideal offered to the reading public by writers of heroic novels, particularly as regards the way novelists responded to the ideological changes taking place during the period in question, identified by modern scholars as being both rapid and profound. The relationship between the concept of heroism embodied in the novel and alternative ideals, including social values such as honnêteté and galanterie, is assessed and an attempt is made to evaluate the contribution made by the heroic novel to the debate on man's moral worth being conducted in the literature of seventeenth-century France.

The thesis is divided into three parts. Part I ascertains the norms of heroism in the novel during the period from 1630 to 1660 and traces the modifications made to them in response to changing social and ideological attitudes. Part II analyses the most important heroic
nove|s individu|ally, estab|lishing the concept of hero|ism they em|body and asse|ssing the contribution they made to the pattern of development of the novel as a whole. Part III considers some of the factors involved in the decline of the heroic novel.
PART I
The popularity of the heroic novel during the years 1640-1660 is not hard to establish, if only by the sheer volume of output and the eagerness of publishers to be associated with the more significant works. To ascertain why it should have been so is, however, a different matter. Novelists responded to what they felt to be a public demand but the demand was a complex thing, made up of needs differing from one group to another and possibly within individuals.

On one level, there was simple escapism, the need to fill in an hour or two of the ample leisure time enjoyed by the upper classes, a need which the novel had been fulfilling for generations. More positively, there was a desire to be stirred by accounts of the exploits of great men, to feel that one was in some way sharing in the actions and the thought-processes of those who stood out from the ordinary run of mortals. For some, there was a need to believe in an ideal version of man as a palliative to the evidence, abundant in everyday life, of man's weaknesses and shortcomings. Such an ideal might best be embodied in the figure of a military leader, an epitome of all the virtues of the noblesse d'épée's class-myth, or it might emerge as an expression of the aspirations towards politeness and galanterie characteristic of the period.

The novelists who wrote in response to these needs made their own assessment of how they could best please the public, but their response was necessarily conditioned by their own personal attitudes and by the changes taking place in the society for which they wrote, for the period in question was marked by particularly rapid and far-reaching changes in the political, philosophical and social ethos.
On the one hand, the political situation underwent violent fluctuations. The steady movement towards a centralised system of government pursued by Kichelieu at the expense of the old aristocratic and legal establishment was met after the Cardinal's death by a resurgence of aristocratic individualism. The upheaval of the Fronde with its shifting alliances seriously weakened the independent role of the aristocracy and confirmed the trend towards absolutism. The external politics of the time had an effect on attitudes towards military activities. The early campaigns of the Thirty Years War and particularly those in which the duc d'Anghien won a series of brilliant victories were greeted with enormous enthusiasm and the return of the officers to court for the winter was treated as the triumphant return of demi-gods. By the time the Treaty of Westphalia was signed in 1648, the mood was much less euphoric. The prince de Condé's reputation stood much lower and, after his behaviour in the Fronde, the former hero lost much of the admiration he had enjoyed. The writer of novels therefore needed to be aware of the changes in the mood of the public for which he was writing and to modify the type of individual he presented as a hero. The kind of morally independent aristocratic warrior who would have corresponded to the general mood in 1640 would not necessarily be so acceptable in 1655.

On the ideological plane, the period 1630-1660 saw a progressive decline in the belief accorded to the supremacy of the will and its gradual replacement by an awareness of the irrational factors influencing human behaviour. The average reader of novels was perhaps not particularly concerned with philosophical concepts and arguments as such but would certainly have been interested in the way they affected the popular representation of idealised romantic love. The whittling away of man's presumed control over his passions and the assumption of the existence of powerful forces which could be defined no more precisely than as a je ne sais quoi
had a profound influence on the type of hero presented in the novel. Taken in conjunction with the strong feminist movement which built up towards the middle of the century and which took on an extreme form in the précieux salons of the 1650s, it indicates the emergence of a new sensibility, adumbrating the faith in the passions characteristic of the eighteenth century.

In the following six chapters, an attempt is made to define the heroism depicted in the heroic novel, a definition which must necessarily be broad in view of the background of changing circumstances, mentioned above, against which individual novels were produced. Chapters I and II deal respectively with the generally acknowledged characteristics of the hero and those features which were the subject of conflicting interpretations. Chapter III is concerned with the concept of prudence and the attitude of the hero towards fortune. Chapters IV and V cover the area of the passions, particularly love, and the influence of feminism on the kind of heroic relationships depicted. Chapter VI deals with the relative importance accorded to imagination and truth, whether conceived of as historical truth or truth to life, by those writers who offered the reader an admirable and imitable model of heroism. These parameters define the aspects of human activity which the writers (and presumably also the readers) of heroic novels considered to be suitable material for an exercise in the exaltation of man's greatness, but they also reveal areas where a belief in that greatness was not so firmly rooted and which consequently became the starting-point for a rejection of the concept of heroism.
CHAPTER I

The Nature of the Hero

The heroic novel was normally constructed around the exploits of a great warrior, usually a well-known figure taken from history, endowed with many of the qualities of the knight errant familiar to readers of medieval romances of chivalry. Despite the superficial resemblance to the knight errant, however, the hero of the heroic novel had his own separate pedigree including elements borrowed from other forms of the novel. The three major confluents were the Greek romances, particularly the Histoire éthiopique of Heliodorus; the pastoral, or more specifically l'Astrée; and the descendants of the medieval romances of chivalry, particularly the Amadis de Gaule cycle, from each of which the heroic novel took certain features and united them in a glorification of man.

Amyot's translation of Heliodorus (1547) was still accepted as the standard one in the seventeenth century, having gone through seven reprints by 1626, but other versions also appeared. D'Audiguier produced a modernised edition of Amyot in 1609 which was reprinted in 1614, 1616 and 1626; Montlyard's new translation of 1623 was reprinted in 1626 and 1633. Jacques de Rochemaure published a translation of Achilles Tatius' Clitophon et Leucippe in 1572, superseded by Baudoin's version in 1635. Eustathius' Ismène et Isménie appeared in translation in 1625.

The concept of the hero as represented in these three major Greek romances lacked most of the elements considered essential in the heroic novel. Théagène in Histoire éthiopique is physically striking, but his exploits are restricted
to winning a race, capturing a runaway bull and defeating an Ethiopian wrestler, which he does by a David-like dexterity against a clumsy Goliath rather than by any superior strength or skill.\(^1\) The battle episodes contain no individual exploits, either by Théagène or even the generals concerned, but are given over entirely to descriptions of the tactics used and the methods of fighting employed by soldiers from different regions.\(^2\) Amyot himself comments that the work lacks grandeur because the author does not give his hero any memorable exploits to perform\(^3\) and the same lack of heroic action is noted by Sorel\(^4\) and Hotman de Latour.\(^5\)

The heroes of Tatius and Eustathius are similar. They are capable of putting up some resistance to the pirates and others who constantly seek to carry them off, but they never succeed in imposing their will on those around. They are victims, and their authors, like Heliodorus, prefer to play on the pathos of the situations into which fate has pushed them rather than make them capable of a level of activity sufficient to free themselves from the control of others. Both Clitophon et Leucippe and Ismène et Isménie, being related by the hero in the first person, have the added disadvantage that the reader is not able to obtain an objective view of the central character.

These Greek authors had their French disciples who faithfully reproduced the same framework, with the hero and heroine pretending to be brother and sister, sailing to and fro across the Mediterranean, being shipwrecked, captured by pirates, threatened by the lusts of masters and mistresses, and in each case displaying the same passivity in the face of fortune's apparent hostility. In Du vray et parfaict amour\(^6\) Théogènes is sufficiently martial to be put in charge of the

---

2. Id., fol. 127-37.
4. La Bibliothèque françoise, ed.cit., p. 182.
5. Histoire celtique, Advertissement.
6. Fumée, Du vray et parfaict amour (Paris, 1612). First edition 1599. This work was published as a translation of the second-century Greek philosopher, Athenagoras, but was later revealed as a forgery; see Huet, Traité de l'origine des romans, ed.cit., pp. 162-8.
Scythian army but nonetheless finds it impossible to retain his liberty against various brigands, royal favourites and other enemies. The *Histoire africaine* presents a hero who, although he is claimed to be capable of 'des prodiges de valeur pour la defence des siens', is constantly being captured and, when given the opportunity to reconquer his kingdom from a usurper at the head of an army, prefers to enter the country disguised as a merchant to try to win over the people by stealth: he is again taken prisoner. The *Histoire negrepontique* employs the same stereotypes. The hero, Alexandre Castriot, though a descendant of the great Scanderbeg, is essentially passive. He and his beloved, Olimpe, are subjected to a series of adventures inflicted on them by other people and from which they have to escape. When Alexandre is condemned to death by a sea-captain, he resigns himself to his fate:

\[\text{Le Prince ... estoit lié, & quand il ne l'eust pas esté, le nombre des autres estoit si grand, qu'il eust esté impossible de s'en defaire par force. Ne sachant donc quel conseil prendre en ceste angoisse pour en sortir, il se resolut à souffrir la mort patiemment & l'offrir à Dieu pour reparation de ses fautes, se consolant sur ce qu'il laissoit Olimpe pour publier son innocence & son extraction. Il se met à genoux avec un visage Chrestien & resolu tout ensemble, mesprisant la mort, mais mesprisant aussi la gloire.}\]

He is thrown overboard and is washed ashore at the very spot where the captain is talking to a magistrate; the question of honour and vengeance is, however, settled not by a duel but by a contest of harangues in court.

In his *Histoire indienne*, Boisrobert made a genuine attempt to offer something new, as Balzac pointed out, but the influence of Heliodorus is still paramount. The

8. *id.*, Book XI. The parallels with Heliodorus are very apparent in this work: the opening shipwreck, Sophonisbe's royal descent of which she is unaware, the pursuit of Cléomède by the lustful Androphile are the most obvious.
10. *id.*, pp. 234 et seq.
12. 'Lettre de Monsieur de Balzac escrite à une dame de qualité', published with the *Histoire indienne*. 
points at which the hero might have made an impact by his physical prowess are allowed to pass unmarked: for instance, he and his companion abandon the defence of the besieged town of Visapore because the enemy are too numerous, and the feats of arms in a tournament are scarcely accorded a mention though the dancing that precedes it is described in detail.

Though radically different from the Greek romances in its inspiration, L'Astrée shared with them a reluctance to emphasize the aggressive side of the hero's character. The shepherds who represent the central area of interest are not lacking in courage and are quite capable of defending their own interests or protecting the innocent. Filandre, for instance, sees a stranger molesting Diane and, going to her aid, is run through by the stranger's sword, but he succeeds in ramming the metal end of his crook so far into the other's head that it will not come out. The urge to measure one's strength against an opponent is never applauded as an admirable thing in itself, however. There are knights who follow chivalrous pursuits but the author never allows them to build up a heroic image. The fight between Damon and Tersandre is recounted in two lines. Egide, Ligdamon's squire, describing a battle in which his master performed 'tant de merveilles que l'une me fait oublier l'autre', gives no general account of the fighting and cuts himself short with 'je ne veux icy vous ennuyer par une particulaire description de ceste journée, aussi bien n'en sciaurois-je venir à bout.'

When war comes to the Forez region and the town of Marcilly is besieged, the shepherds and townsfolk cope impressively with the assaults of Polémus and his troops, but they always act as a group: there are no individuals who stand out above the general body of defenders. Céladon, who had been captured by Polémus while still disguised as the shepherdess Alexis,

13. pp. 298 et seq.
14. pp. 152 et seq.
16. id., II,239.
17. id., I,426-8; cf. I,347.
18. cf. IV,742-6.
finds himself having to fight outside Marcilly with five companions, covering the escape of Astrée and Silvie into the city. D'Urfé's intention seems to have been to show that Céladon could fight valiantly, yet his description of the scene is curiously negative, emphasising what is done to Céladon more than his exploits, suggesting in fact that what is remarkable is the fact that he is fighting at all:

Chacun admiroit leur valeur, mais tous demeuroient revis de voir ce que Céladon faisoit, car l'habit de Bergere qu'il portoit rendoit toutes ses actions plus admirables. Son rondache estoit tellement herissé de fleches qui s'y estoient plantées, que les dernières ne trouvoient plus de place vide, et falloit que par nécessité elles frappassent sur d'autres fleches. Son espée estoit toute teinte de sang, et la poignée mesme en desgoutoit. Il estoit blessé en deux ou trois lieux, et mesmo en l'espaulde droicte d'un javelot qui avoit esté lancé, et qui luy avoit fait une grande playe ; et quoy que la perte du sang l'affoiblist beaucoup, si est-ce que le desir extrême qu'il avoit de se venger de l'outrage qu'on avoit fait à Astrée, le transportoit de telle sorte, que presque il ne la ressentoit pas. Mais, en effect, toute cette défense eust esté vaine sans le secours de Damon ...

Such an approach on the part of d'Urfé is in keeping with the ethic of l'Astrée, in which the greatest expression of man's striving lies in the renunciation of his claims to self-fulfilment and the absorption of his aspirations by the beloved. If heroism exists in l'Astrée, it is a heroism of self-sacrifice, epitomised by Célidee who disfigures herself to resolve an impossible situation. It is an ethic almost completely opposed to that of the heroic novel, in which the hero's projection of himself is of paramount importance.

The pastoral disappeared fairly rapidly after l'Astrée, though there was a good deal of borrowing of episodes by

19. id., IV, 802.
20. See Pintard, 'Quelques aspects de l'héroïsme dans l'Astrée', Héroïsme et création littéraire sous les règnes d'Henri IV et de Louis XIII, pp. 233-42. Pintard confirms that the vocabulary of heroism in l'Astrée is infinitely less rich than that of love or galanterie.
other novelists for a number of years. When attempts at fully-fledged pastorals appear during the period of the heroic novel or when episodes of bergerie are introduced into heroic novels, the contrast is so striking as to illustrate clearly the different objectives of the two types of novel.

The romances of chivalry had survived since the Middle Ages in various forms but entered the seventeenth century in a degenerate state. Those which were still being printed were relatively few in number, the main ones being Huon de Bordeaux, Les Quatre Fils Aymon, Ogier le Danois and Maugis d'Aigremont in a combined version with Mabrian, but they seem to have maintained their popularity with at least the less sophisticated section of the reading public, since the Bibliothèque bleue of Troyes continued to turn out editions for many years. They moved progressively further away from the mainstream of literature, however. The edition of Mabrian published in 1625, for instance, presents a primitive kind of prose chronicle, offering a long series of events without order, psychological interest or style. The publisher evidently assumed that the reader would be sufficiently held by the superhuman blows of the hero, since almost no attention is paid to love: women, when they appear, are often unwanted distractions, trying like Delilah to reduce strong men to weakness. From the point of view of production, the work is of a very low order, badly printed, lacking pagination and in places impossible to decipher.

What had in some measure ensured the survival of the romances of chivalry and subsequently superseded them was the publication of the Amadis de Gaule cycle. The translation

22. Lansire, La Diane desguisée (Paris, 1647); Le Grand Cyrus, VI, Book II.
by Herberay des Essarts of eight volumes of the Spanish original between 1540 and 1548 created a tremendous vogue and other translators hurried to produce their own sequels, so that by 1580 twenty-one volumes had been published, taken from Spanish and Italian sources. According to Pasquier, the vogue was over by the end of the sixteenth century, but the decline cannot have lasted long for in 1615 a further three volumes were produced, ostensibly translated from the Spanish, and French authors began to create their own sequences of adventures. Du Verdier intended his Romant des romans to be a conclusion to the cycle but seems to have been persuaded to extend the work from six volumes to seven: the fact that a number of respectable publishers were associated with it and that the production is of a high standard suggests that this kind of story was still popular or at least was expected to be. A similar type of adventure continued to be written by Logeas who evidently felt that the public had an insatiable appetite for stories of questing knights. He refers to the author of Amadis, 'de qui je suis contraint de louer les agréables inventions, suivant en cela le gout de la pluspart des beaux esprits de ce temps', but in fact does not attempt to add to the Amadis cycle itself in his three volumes.

27. Le Romant des romans, où on verra la suite & la conclusion de Don Belianis de Grece, du Chevalier du Soleil & des Amadis, 7 vols. (Paris, 1627-29). Published by Courbé, du Bray, Sommaville, Loyson, Lacquehay and Bessin. The original privilege refers to six volumes. Volume IV appears to have been intercalated.
29. Le Romant heroïque, où sont contenus les memorables faits d'armes de Dom Rosidor, Prince de Constantinople (Paris, 1632); L'Histoire des trois frères; Les Travaux du prince incognu (Paris, 1634). These three works reveal a development in the author's technique. Le Romant heroïque is a shapeless work, lacking in all verisimilitude; L'Histoire des trois frères shows a somewhat greater concern for realism; Les Travaux is more polished, with fewer supernatural elements and a more central position occupied by women.
The heroes of *Amadis de Gaule* and its imitators are concerned primarily with feats of valour. They are capable of tremendous blows and the authors feel it to be part of their function to regale the reader with detailed descriptions of the carnage inflicted in battle or the types of wound suffered in hand-to-hand conflict. The battle in *Amadis* between the armies of Britain and Ireland is typical: the description is long and gory, arms are cut off, eyes put out, heads split in two, combatants hack and heave and roll on the ground. Quarter is neither requested nor offered, and the survivors are driven into the sea and drowned.\(^{30}\) When Amadis catches up with Arcalaus who has abducted Oriane, the blow from his sword cuts right down Arcalaus' back and into the saddle-bow.\(^{31}\)

On the whole, *Amadis* remains within the limits of possibility, but some of the imitators allow their imagination to carry them over into unreality. Du Verdier has two knights killing 472 others in one session and elsewhere another two knights kill forty to sixty tigers in four hours.\(^{32}\) Superhuman blows are so common as to be reduced to the level of cliche — an enemy 'croyoit estre sous les ruines d'une tour que la foudre abat' or 'fut contraint de donner du menton contre l'estomac' or 'voyoit les estoilles, quoy que le soleil ne fust qu'au milieu de sa course'\(^{33}\) — and there is the same emphasis on combat made up entirely of shattering blows, e.g.

\[\text{le chevalier Incogneu ... poussa une estocade dans le ventre d'un avec tant de fureur qu'il le perça de part en part l'envoyant roide mort sur l'herbe ; ... prenant son espee à deux mains Fulgoran la feit tomber sur un avec une force si grande que le poil n'ayant peu retenir le trenchant luy meit la teste en deux pieces.}\(^{34}\)

---

31. id., fol. CXXIII.
34. id., I,540-1.
It is this physical prowess which is central to heroism in the romances of chivalry. The other chivalric qualities established since the Arthurian romances were usually found in the hero as well but they were all subject to some degree of modification according to circumstances. In Amadis, loyalty, the defence of the weak, religious scruples and chastity are all interpreted flexibly at some stage. Only the hero's martial pre-eminence stands out as an absolute.

The hero in the heroic novel shares certain features with each of the three types described above. He has the strength and skill of Amadis, the sensibility of Thégène and the fidelity of Céladon. But he surpasses them all. His creators set out to depict a man who was felt to be qualitatively different from the ordinary run of human beings and whose every action, or indeed whose very existence, was surrounded by an aura of superiority such that the reader had to respond to the individual rather than to the deeds.

The difference between the heroic novel and the Greek romances is measurable in Peristandre, in which De Moreaux took Du vray et parfaict amour and rewrote it as a heroic novel. The result is not very convincing because the original work was by its nature committed to a basic passivity on the part of the hero and heroine, but a good deal of restructuring has taken place: the complaints against the gods have been cut out, the long descriptions of scenes and ceremonies which were such a feature of the Greek romances have been considerably reduced and the whole text has been liberally sprinkled with the epithets of heroism (glorieux, généreux, etc.). Whenever there is an episode containing action it has been rewritten. In Du vray et parfaict amour, for instance, there is a scene in which Théogènes, Adraste and a group of sailors

have left their vessel to look for food, leaving Charide on the shore near the ship:

en peu d'heure elle apperçut ses gens refuir vers eux au grand pas, lesquels estoient suivis d'une multitude d'hommes portans arcs, flesches & dards, lesquels ils lançoient contre les fuyans, dont Theogenes fut atteint d'une flesche dedans un bras. On conseilloit à Charide de se sauver promptement dedans le vaisseau : mais elle feit responce qu'elle n'en feroit rien que premierement elle ne veist Theogenes à sauveté, aymant mieux mourir sur la place que retourner sans luy. La blessure de Theogenes le contraignoit de retenir son pas : parce que la flesche ayant le fer dressé en barbillons estoit demeuree en la plaie, & s'esbranlant par le moyen de la course, luy causoit une grande douleur. Il prie Adraste de courir vers Charide pour la faire monter dedans le vaisseau. Mais ces Scythes pour este legiers à la course furent aussi tost qu'Adraste parmy ceux qui estoient restez sur le bord du fleuve, & se saisissans de tous emmenerent avec eux les uns & les autres.36

In Péristandre, Féliciane (= Charide), Péristandre (= Théogènes), Adraste and Atalante have all gone off and are pursued by a group of Scythians twice as large as their own, but the encounter this time is very different:

Peristandre au souvenir de sa maistresse tourna visage, & fit tant de beaux explois contre ces barbares par son courage & par sa valeur qu'il fut aisé à juger par celle qui l'animoit que les Scites n'auroient pas si bon marché de luy qu'en avoient eu les Bisantins. Que ne fait point cet Amant, il sème la terre de corps : mais comme s'il eust eu un Hydre à combattre, pour un homme qu'il tuoit, il en renaissoit cent autres. Le nombre ne l'étonne point, Adraste le seconde vaillamment, & chaque autre personne de leur suite se defend assez bien pendant quelque temps : Mais comme il faut de nécessité que l'adresse cede à la force, les matelos recreus & de leur faim & de la peine qu'ils avoient au combat, lâchent le pied, s'enfuyent & saignans le vaisseau veulent se mettre dedans & se sauver. Féliciane s'y oppose si genereusement, & en leur faisant honte, elle les oblige à retourner au combat & y va elle-même avec Atalante.

Quand Peristandre vid à ses côtez son Amazone, armée d'un javelot, faire trop de

merveilles pour une fille, Ha ! Madame,
retirez-vous, luy dit-il en combattant,
envez-vous la gloire à Peristandre, &
voulez-vous la luy ravir ? Sans repartir
Feliciane ne laisse pas de combattre : mais
pour la couvrir des coups des ennemis, luy
& son brave compagnon se mettent au devant
de l'elle pour empêcher qu'elle n'en fut
atteinte.

Enfin ce valeureux Amant & ce courageux
ami font leurs derniers effors pour vaincre
ou pour mourir. Il ne s'est jamais rien vu
de semblable aux puissans fais d'armes que
ces deux Grecs firent contre les Scittes.
Pensant avoir a faire au Dieu meme de la
Trace, ces barbares, qui croissoient à
vue d'oeil d'hommes vivans aussi bien que
de mors, augmenterent leurs forces pour
venir à bout de ceux qu'ils avoient attaquez,
& dans ce temps-là, Peristandre fut blessé
d'un coup de flèche qui le mit hors de
combat. Sa blessure fut la victoire de ses
ennemis. Adraste fit bien tout ce qu'il put
pour retirer son ami d'entre leurs mains :
mais luy-même fut fait captif, & Feliciane
n'eut pas une meilleure avanture, voyant
prisonnier son Amant, elle fit gloire
d'être aussi captive.37

These lengthy quotations indicate the way in which a
simple encounter could be turned into a heroic exploit. The
outcome is the same in either case, but in the former the
reader's attention is drawn to the pathos of the situation
as he watches the hero suffer defeat and capture ; in the
latter, the hero's actions inspire admiration as he resists
his enemies. His final capture is of little significance
compared with the moral victory he has gained. Admiration
is in fact the key to the new heroic tone : the relation­
ships between the major characters depend on it. A simple
statement in Du vray et parfaict amour -

Puis Scyeles remerciant Theogenes du bon
devoir qu'il avoit fait en ceste guerre
pour feu son pere, pour luy, & pour son
Royaume, le pria de vouloir demeurer avec
luy38 -

becomes an acclamation in Peristandre :

Peristandre, dit Scielles, qui parloit bon
Grec, je sçay trop bien quels sont vôtre

38. fol. 334.
courage, votre valueur, & votre experience, & quels sont les prodigieux exploits de guerre que vous avez faits contre Eurus, & les Nomades, ses sujets & nos ennemis, pour douter d'une chose que j'ay vue & que la Renommée publiera par tout l'Univers, etc. 39

Comments on the nature of man have been reformulated to express a heroic view of human aspirations. For instance, Charide's comment that the Romans had perverted the Greeks' sense of public duty by offering triumphs to victorious generals 40 is converted to approval of the Roman attitude and scorn for the naïveté of the Greeks. 41

The same process of conversion to a heroic register by the emphasising of an individual's capacity for spectacular physical action and by the refining of relationships between admirable characters through the use of a certain kind of impressive diction can be seen applied to the romance of chivalry in Le Polémire 42, the only novel by an otherwise unknown writer. It is a poor work and seems to have been composed over a lengthy period, since Book I is very different from Books II and III. In Book I, the hero is used to link up a series of disparate incidents, very much in the tradition of the romance of chivalry, full of magic and spells: he finds himself, for instance, entering a cavern, past la porte venimeuse guarded by a monstrous creature with a pike, in which he finds, surrounded by severed heads, a magician inside a circle of vipers, casting spells over the captive Charisbée. In Books II and III, the difference is remarkable. Polémire has become a morally admirable individual, searching for his Amaranthe in a world of heroic endeavour, and the plot consists of situations chosen not for their strange or terrifying nature but because they demonstrate his exceptional character. Each duel or battle is a chance to build up his heroic stature, e.g.

40. Du vray et parfaict amour, fol. 205.
41. Peristandre, II,19.
42. Le Polémire ou l'Illustre Polonois (Paris, 1646). Baldner (op.cit.) lists the author as Père Calixte Auguste Deschaussée.
le grand courage de ce jeune Prince qui se joignit à son père fit reprendre coeur aux soldats & les fit retourner au combat, ... . Le Roy de Pologne poursuivit le Roy de Dannemark & le tua de sa propre main. Et Polemire demeura dans le champ de bataille où il fit des merveilles de sa personne, tuant tout ce qui se présentait devant lui, & faisant toutes sortes d'efforts de peur qu'ils ne se r'alliassent pour revenir à la charge en leur désespoir. Jarmeric fut fait son prisonnier de guerre, & (chose estrange) ces deux jeunes Capitaines s'embrassèrent aussitôt que l'un fut au pouvoir de l'autre & se jurèrent une éternelle amitié : mais quoy qu'il fust facile à Polemire de le relascher, neantmoins la fidélité qu'il devoit à son Prince le retint si bien qu'il le fit garder dans une tente tandis qu'il poursuivit la pointe de sa victoire.43

The type of hero presented in the heroic novel is very much an idealised character. His creators came as near as it was possible in a Christian society to assimilating him to the classical definition of the hero as a demi-god, a being who shared the attributes of both mortals and immortals. He can always be seen to be an exceptional being. His face, bearing and presence make an immediate impression which causes those around to respond actively :

parmy les hommes il y en a dont les ames sont plus vigoureuses les unes que les autres, & si puissantes qu'elles forcent secretement la resolution d'autruy à con­descendre à leurs volontez.44

Lesser mortals immediately feel the effect of the charisma and take up an appropriately subordinate position. Other extraordinary individuals offer respect and esteem on a basis of equality because of 'la difference qu'il y a des ames élevées, en qui les belles actions ne forment qu'une impression d'estime & de respect, aux ames basses, en qui

elles produisent l'envie & l'inimitié. His natural authority - 'une certaine grace, qu'on ne peut voir sans obéir ; à mesme qu'elle se montre, elle commande' - is easier to experience than to define: it sometimes appears like flames round his face or more simply as 'je ne scay quoy de majestueux & de Martial.' It enables him to take his place as a natural leader and inspire those around to give of their utmost for his sake. In war, this is usually achieved by the force of example, but it is frequently reinforced by an ability to harangue which has a galvanising effect on his troops.

He is possessed of superhuman courage which allows him, like Orodes, to pick up burning coals to demonstrate his devotion to a cause. In combat, he displays a physical strength and skill which is frequently carried to the very limits of credibility but rarely exceeds them, as had been the case in the medieval romances. In the heroic novel, it is not uncommon for a hero to kill a dozen opponents in single combat or to account for a few hundred dead in a full-scale battle, but the fabulous numbers slaughtered by the heroes of romance were felt to be so exaggerated as to be unacceptable. 'Je ne donne pas plus de force & de courage qu'un homme genereux en peut avoir,' wrote the anonymous author of Axiane, 'et je ne remplis pas leurs veines de plus de sang qu'elles ne sont capables d'en tenir. ... Je descris mes Heros comme des hommes dont les ames & les vertus participoient veritablement de la Divinite : mais qui avoient un corps dont les forces n'excedoient pas le pouvoir d'un mortel, & qui estoient proportionnez à sa condition and most authors agreed with him.

47. Cléopâtre, II, 273.
50. Axiane (Paris, 1647), Au lecteur. Gomberville reveals himself to be nervous about exceeding the limits of credibility in Polexandre where the hero is shown pacifying a kingdom in eight days. He explains for the benefit of those who do not know the provinces in question and who might think 'que je veux faire Polexandre pour un Amadis ou pour quelqu'autre Chevalier enchanté' that the area only contained three large villages and twenty to thirty hamlets.
These outstanding physical characteristics are paralleled by an immense intellectual prowess. Nature has endowed the hero with the propensity to learn which allows him to attain full maturity while still a boy, and in some cases it is evident that he was actually born with innate knowledge. While still a youth, Polexandre already knew what even the cleverest men could only learn after years of study and experience.\(^{51}\) At the age of twelve, Pyrrhus had mastered the most difficult elements of philosophy\(^{52}\); at ten, Facore was capable of the same mental operations as a man of thirty\(^{53}\); more modestly, Polémire managed to learn all the natural sciences and four languages within the space of three years during his adolescence.\(^{54}\)

Above all, the hero is a man of action. He is always ready to react to any situation with the appropriate means: he usually moves swiftly to avert danger or attack injustice and often appears impulsive in the spontaneity of his actions. Action is in fact an indispensable ingredient in heroism, which is why the martyr cannot be strictly considered heroic.\(^{55}\) On occasion, prudence may dictate the need for deliberate restraint from direct action, but such cases merely show the hero's grasp of all the factors involved in action: he delays in order to obtain better results from action at a later stage.

The hero always remains true to his own honour. He will repay debts of honour, even, or perhaps especially, towards his enemies. He will never lie (though he may occasionally deceive in a good cause) because lying implies that he cannot win by legitimate means. He will fulfil his obligations to his king and country, his family and friends,


\(^{54}\) Le Polémire, p. 200 (rectified).

\(^{55}\) cf. Danjou (Le Tableau de l'homme fort, Nevers, 1645, pp.5, 8): 'ce n'est pas assez qu'un homme courageux endure patiemment les peines & les travaux qui se presentent : il faut de plus qu'il agisse, & qu'il forme des desseins releves, illustres & magnifiques. ... L'action dit un principe & la passion
provided they do not conflict with other aspects of his honour, and he will unhesitatingly prefer death to the remotest possibility of his not being able to hold true to these ideals.

This sense of honour is indissolubly linked to his sense of liberty. Freedom is essential, not necessarily on the physical level, but certainly in the moral sphere. Even though he has been taken prisoner, he will maintain an attitude of moral independence (which usually has an immediate effect on his captors). Similarly, his subjection to an acknowledged sovereign is seen to be a moral contract with responsibilities on both sides.

It is ultimately by this moral independence alone that his right to be considered a hero must be judged, for all his other qualities are meaningless if he does not possess it. It is not a question of status or power or prestige. The heroic aura stems from an inner conviction that he is destined for greatness, combined with the capacity to carry out the actions necessary to achieve greatness. Any situation can be turned into a demonstration of heroism by allowing the urge to sublimity and a superhuman ability to operate freely, as Ibrahim does when he establishes himself as Sultan Soliman's superior by making a personal decision to fight actively, in the moral sense, that is, to take the course of events into his own hands, which he does with spectacular results, rather than remain under orders in the ranks with the other slaves. 56

All these features of the hero were found equally in other branches of heroic literature, such as plays, odes and panegyrics, and they were freely attributed by eulogists to the real-life heroes of the time. According to his biographer, Montmorency could break in wild horses at an age when most boys can hardly stay in the saddle and, later on in his career, he revealed an innate capacity for commanding a naval
battle, even though he had never been in one before, since 'les personnes que Dieu destine aux actions extraordinaires viennent au monde avec les vertus qu'il faut pour les achever, & n'ont pas besoin de l'estude ny de l'exercice qui ruinent bien souvent le corps avant qu'ils ayent formé l'esprit des autres hommes.'\textsuperscript{57} The Comte de Harcourt 'sçait commander avant que de commander. ... l'usage ne luy a rien appris ; sans experience il est sçavant ; l'exercice l'a confirmé, il ne l'a pas instruit.'\textsuperscript{58} The duc de Guise had such a charisma that 'on a veu des Assemblées, qui n'estoient pas petites, se rendre en un instant à sa bonne mine. Il n'y avoit point de coeur qui pust tenir contre ce visage : il persuadoit avant que d'ouvrir la bouche : il estoit impossible de luy vouloir mal en sa presence.'\textsuperscript{59} The Great Condé's admirers found him beyond comparison : 'son Esprit enfin est le Miracle de tous les esprits, parce que n'ignoretnt rien de tout ce que l'esprit humain peut sçavoir, il est luy seul effectivement comme un Illustre Abrege de tous les hommes.'\textsuperscript{60} 'Il eut toutes ces lumieres vives et promptes qui viennent du genie & de la presence de l'esprit. Il fist tout ce que fait faire la vigueur, la fermeté, le courage. Il donna les ordres et les executa ; il fut capitaine, il fut soldat, et s'il se peut, quelque chose au dessus de luy-mesme.'\textsuperscript{61}

The hero was invariably noble, though the precise interpretation of the term was the subject of debate in some novels. Since he was usually represented as a king, prince or highly-placed aristocrat, he was assimilated to the seventeenth-century aristocratic class-myth, according to which nobility was the prerogative of a particular class, the noblesse d'épée,


\textsuperscript{58} Ceriziers, \textit{Le Heros françois}, p. 3.


\textsuperscript{60} Du Bois-Hus, \textit{Le Prince illustre} (Paris, 1645), pp. 34-5.

\textsuperscript{61} Eloge de Condé, Arsenal MS 3135, fol. 61-9.
who existed as the defence and bulwark of the state. The only justification they needed was that their lives were ready to be sacrificed in the service of the king.

By virtue of being descended from generations of noble ancestors, they had inherited a kind of distillation of vertu, each generation passing on to the next the essence of its own highest qualities. "La matiere & la premiere semence de la vertu des hommes se fait de la bonne naissance" every true-born aristocrat had a predisposition to vertu which could only come from high birth. Though it was possible for a commoner to display vertu, there was felt to be an essential difference in the quality:

> il est certain que la vertu d'une personne de bon lieu a quelque chose de plus noble que celle qui se trouve en un homme de petite extraction.

> Quoy que la vertu naisse au village, elle retient toujours son merite ; la bure ne luyoste pas sa valeur, mais elle estouffe sa majesté. Au contraire, une bonne naissance luy donne de nouveaux rayons, elle augmente sa splendeur.

While birth was the beginning of vertu, education had to work upon the seeds implanted in the soul and bring them to fruition - education understood not as a means of developing the intellectual faculties and stimulating the curiosity, but a process which ensured that the young nobleman had absorbed all the beliefs and prejudices, the manners and airs of his class. The word most frequently used to describe the imperceptible process whereby the young man was moulded into the required form was nourriture, a gradual influencing towards the right reactions by exposure to the world of which he was to form a part.

The discrepancy between this myth and the reality of the noblesse d'épée was no doubt made frequently evident in the everyday life of the time, and the moralists were quite

64. Cériziers, Le Tacite françois (Paris, 1648), Part II, p. 245.
prepared to point out that things were not always what they ought to be:

Ne flattons point en cecy, si les Nobles ont quelque chose de meilleur, cela vient plus souvent de leur Education que de leur Naissance. Comme on en voit plusieurs de basse extraction qui ont le coeur generieux & l'esprit excellent : aussi en voit-on un grand nombre d'illustre famille, qui neanmoins n'ont ny lumiere ny courage, & qui mesme sont plus imparfaittes que les moindres de la lie du peuple.65

They separated the issue of birth from that of vertu, insisting that high birth was of no intrinsic significance unless it accompanied personal merit. Dubosc was particularly outspoken, declaring that the actions a man performs outweigh any considerations of birth: 'il n'importe pas beaucoup de qui nous ayons receu la vie, pourveu qu'elle soit bonne.'66

He removes nobility from its framework of hereditary privilege and offers it as an objective standard of virtue accessible to all.67 La Mothe le Vayer compares noble birth to a zero which has no value of its own but serves to increase the value of other figures when united with them, and again to 'une lumiere qui eclaire & fait paroistre davantage le bien & le mal de ceux qui la possedent.'68 Vulson de la Colombière looks back approvingly to the days when nobility was indistinguishable from virtue and questions of lineage were of no relevance.69 In Le Vray Theatre d'honneur et de chevalerie, a work in which he particularly censures the aristocracy of his day for having degenerated from its glorious origins, he warns the nobles not to pride themselves on the actions of their ancestors, for nobility is not a legacy to be transmitted automatically: 'la Noblesse demeurera toute entiere a celuy seul, qui l'auroit peu esperer de son propre merite.'70

66. id., II, 240.
This insistence on the pre-eminence of vertu was taken up by one particular section of society, the noblesse de robe, and exploited in the interests of their own class-myth. The theme of the homo novus can be traced back to the later Middle Ages, but in the sixteenth century it was widely debated and after 1604, when the institution of the paulette made it possible for the robins to pass on their offices and titles by hereditary succession to their descendants, it developed a new dimension. The noblesse de robe saw themselves no longer distinguished qualitatively from the noblesse d'épée but only by the nature of their commitment to the state. They could claim that they represented the true backbone of society by virtue of the services they rendered, interpreting vertu as the carrying out of public duties for the maintenance of civil society, with ennoblement as its just reward. Some apologists went so far as to argue that the bearing of arms and the exercise of military skills were subordinate to the arts of peace.

Mayerne Turquet adopts a historical approach, examining the 'exercices vertueux aux devoirs & charges de la République' which the aristocracy claimed as the origin of their rights. He considers it doubtful that the qualities which established the nobility of the Goths and Franks, from which the oldest families claimed descent (viz. 'la fureur & temerité guerriere') constituted vertu. At a time when society scarcely existed, men of war might have been necessary to impose some sort of order, but once this was achieved, the need was for men of knowledge and experience who could organise the state as senators and magistrates. Chevreau argues that vertu can be pursued and gloire achieved via either the robe or the sword, but he rejects the idea that the man who bears arms is greater than the man of the robe. The functions of the noblesse d'épée are relatively simple to fulfil, those of the robe very complex, because the demands of peace are greater than those of war. The principal argument used by the robe in La Contention de l'espée avec la robbe is that nobility, being derived from vertu,

71. La Monarchie aristodemocratique (Paris, 1611), p. 249.
is accessible to all and 'puisque les sciences sont des vertus intellectuelles, qui ont une belle liaison avec les Morales, pouvez-vous nier que la Noblesse ne vienne des sciences ?' 73

The heroic novel purveyed an idealised world in which disputes between various branches of the aristocracy had no place. The only hierarchy which existed in it was moral rather than social, though it reflected closely enough the class-myth of the noblesse d'épée. However, discussions on the relationship between nobility and vertu found their way into several novels because the hero, belonging as he did to the highest level of the social order (royalty or the purest aristocracy), might have been considered to owe as much of his vertu to his ancestors as to himself. Novelists wanted to make it clear that the glory of their heroes was in no way dependent on the deeds of their ancestors, but at the same time they did not want to deprive them of those ancestors. One of the simplest devices for resolving this dilemma was to make the hero leave his homeland, assume another name and impress the world without the benefit of borrowed glory. Thus, Oroondate makes a reputation for himself under the name of Oronte; Cyrus first presents himself to the reader under the cryptonym Artamène; Pacore, Prince of the Parthians, leaves his home and gains glory as Alcide in Bactria; Armetzar, son of Tamerlane the Great, spends most of his career as Phocate in a neighbouring kingdom. 74

As an extension of this device, the hero could be shown believing himself to be of low birth. The full value of his vertu can then be weighed and when, as invariably happens, it is revealed that he is in fact of noble birth, the impression already formed by the world is simply confirmed. In Cléopâtre, for instance, a character called

73. Montagu, La Contention de l'espée avec la robbe sur les parties du prince (Paris, 1670), pp. 747-8. On nobility as ideal and reality, see Sutcliffe, Guez de Balzac et son temps, Chapter III.
74. In Cassandre, Le Grand Cyrus, Alcide and Ladice respectively.
Artaban appears in Volume III, 'jeune capitaine, qui selon le bruit commun d'une naissance obscure estoit parvenu par sa vertu aux plus hautes dignitez en peu d'annees.' His awareness of his own abilities makes him capable of changing sides in war if these abilities are not taken as the only criterion for judging him. He is in love with the Princess Elise who is taught by her confidente Urione to distinguish between the real man and his social background:

Sa vertu & ses services ... vous le doivent rendre plus considerable que la naissance ne l'eut peu faire. ... Artaban n'est pas Prince ; mais sa vertu l'eslève au dessus des plus grands Princes, & le mettra sans doute en un rang plus considerable que ceux qu'ils tiennent.76

Elise agrees to accept Artaban subject to her father's approval. When her father refuses, Artaban's reply is uncompromising: 'Si la recompense que j'ay demandée est au dessus de mes services, mes services sont au dessus de toutes les autres recompenses que vous me pouvez donner.'77

In Volume V a character called Britomare (who had already appeared in Volume I) recounts his life-story. He is of low birth but has always felt himself drawn to the highest honours:

le Ciel ... m'a fait naistre avec un courage qui ... m'a tousjours persuadé que par une espee que j'ay souvent tirée avec succes, je me pouvois égaler aux Princes, & que je ne treuverois point de plus grand que moy entre les hommes, s'il n'estoit plus vaillant & plus vertueux.78

When he falls in love with the King of Ethiopia's daughter, he is not dismayed but perseveres: 'si je n'ay pas la naissance, j'ay le courage d'elle & si par le courage je ne puis suppléer au defaut de la naissance, il faut perir noblement plustost que d'abaisser nos pensées.'79

75. III, 179.
77. III, 286.
78. V, 11-12.
79. V, 22.
In Volume VII it emerges that Britomare is in fact the same man as Artaban. He continues his career, acquiring glory and fame until in Volume XII, at the height of his renown, it is revealed that he is actually the son of Pompee and he is made king of the Parthians. Elise is pleased for his sake but not unduly impressed:

je crois avoir tesmoigné que sans le secours de la naissance, Artaban m'estoit plus considérable que tous les plus grands Monarques. 80

The theme of birth and vertu is treated very seriously by Juvenel who made it the major element in one of his works and pursued it beyond the point at which most novelists stopped. The hero of Dom Pélage is the son of the Spanish king who is deposed by the wicked Vitiza and thrown into prison. The boy's mother gives him to an aged servant to bring up before going to share her husband's imprisonment. The servant, however, hands the baby on, without revealing the circumstances of his birth, to a peasant woman whose own child has just died. As a result, Pélage's adoptive parents are unaware of his true identity and treat him exactly like their other children, giving him the name Hidaspe. His innate vertu begins to work in spite of his environment and he runs away to the wars at the age of thirteen:

j'ay conceu depuis quelque temps un tel degoust pour la bassesse de ma fortune que tous les objets qui s'offrent à mes sens me desplaisent ; la pauvreté de nostre maison me choque, la rudesse de nos passe-temps & la simplicité de nos entretiens m'importunent ; je laboure la terre & je travaille au reste du mesnage à contre-coeur : j'écoute à regret les grossiers raisonnemens de nos compagnons : ... le coeur me dit que je suis né pour quelque exercice plus noble & moins ravallé que l'agriculture, & que je me fais tort d'employer toute la vigueur de mes jeunes ans à gagner le pain que je mange. 81

80. XII, 212.
He is fired by the ideal of the great men who have risen from nothing and refuses to see himself held back by his birth, telling himself:

leur naissance leur nuisoit autant que la tienne te scuroit nuire, & le commencement de leur fortune n'avloit pas plus d'éclat : pourquoi ne tenterois-tu point ce qui leur a si glorieusement réussi ?

Inevitably he makes a great impression in the ranks of Charles Martel's army and increases his reputation after returning to Spain and fighting against the Moors.

Throughout his career, Pélage succeeds by refusing to contemplate failure. He is convinced that, at the sight of vertu, everyone will be filled with admiration and put aside all considerations of birth. He and his "brother" Cratile decide to give such great proofs of valour in war 'que quand nous viendrons à publier la bassesse de nostre origine, au lieu de nous nuire, cela ne servira qu'à faire estimer davantage nostre vertu.' Similarly, far from despairing when he realises he has fallen in love with the king's daughter, he tells himself: 'suy les genereux mouvemens que cet illustre amour te donne, tente les plus grands hazards & les plus difficiles entreprises, fais des efforts si puissans que ton courage t'éleve à la grandeur des Roys & force le Ciel d'accorder à ta vertu les avantages qu'il a refusez à ta naissance.' And with one notable exception the généreux characters in the book respond in exactly the way he has predicted. He is elected King of the Asturias by the Christians. Sacar, a Spanish nobleman, loves "Hidaspe" for his vertu no less when he hears of his apparently base origins. It is Sacar who spells out the underlying philosophy of the book to his daughter, whom he hopes to

82. id., I,99.
83. I,164.
84. I,222.
85. Princess Godioze, beloved of Dom Pélage: 'cette injuste Princesse avoit toujours plus d'égard à punir l'audace de mon amour qu'à reconnoistre la grandeur de mes services' (II,208), but when she finds out his true identity, 'Godioze me fit paroistre ... une estime nonpareille' (II,224).
marry to the hero he so much admires:

Deux choses, ma fille, elevent ordinaire-
ment quelques hommes si fort au dessus
des autres : ... C'est la grandeur de la
naissance ou l'excellence de la vertu.
Quiconque a l'un & l'autre n'a rien à
souhaiter au de-là, mais qui possede
seulement la dernière en un degré bien
éminent, quoi que sa naissance ne soit
point illustre, ny sa fortune éclatante,
va toujours plus haut que l'ordinaire
des hommes & s'acquit à la fin, en bien
faisant, les avantages que la nature avoit
refusez à sa condition, avec plus de gloire
que s'ils avoient precedé sa vertu.86

This argument is of course to a large extent invali-
dated by the fact that Dom Pélage is really of royal blood,
but it is re-established by the parallel figure of Cratile,
his supposed brother. As a boy he had felt none of the
stirrings in the soul which had so troubled "Hidaspe", but
he was so impressed by the latter's magnanimity that he
determined to follow him to the wars. He is to be found
throughout the novel ably seconding Pélage in battle,
establishing a sound reputation for valour in his own right,
and falling in love with and eventually marrying a noble
lady.87

The implication of Dom Pélage is that vertu is latent
in everyone and can either be stifled by a base environment
or liberated by contact with the higher things of life.88
The possession of vertu is what gives entitlement to nobility
and, given the necessary will-power, anyone can achieve it.
It is a view which would have been approved of by the moral-
ists of the day but it was too radical for the heroic novel
in general. It was certainly the inherent qualities which
mattered most in the hero and the world of heroism was open
theoretically to anyone with the requisite merit, whatever

86. I,192.
87. Who naturally shares the open-minded attitude of the other
characters : 'Non, non, Cratile, ... ne pensez pas que
l'inegalité de vostre naissance à la mienne m'ayt fait con-
damner vostre passion. J'ay toujours mieux aymé la vertu
sans noblesse que la noblesse sans vertu' (I,365).
his origins, but the novel avoided the awkward social implications of such a view by simply identifying moral nobility with social nobility. Anyone who demonstrates that he has true heroic virtue must automatically belong to the highest aristocracy. Even when a man has been washed up by the sea and is lying unconscious, 'des que la generreuse Oriane eust jetté les yeux dessus, elle ne douta plus qu'il ne fust de sang illustre.' When he recovers and sees his benefactress, he is similarly impressed: 'cette auguste majesté qui eclatte si visiblement sur vostre front & cette haute generosite dont vous me donnez aujourd'hui de si sensibles. tesmoignages m'ont d'abord appris la grandeur de vostre rang & l'excellence de vos vertus.' In an ideal world, all virtuous people could belong to the highest rank without any of the anomalies to be found in real life.

Many of the features mentioned above were retained as constants in heroic literature throughout the seventeenth century and to a certain extent are common to heroes in other, very different, periods of literature as well.

89. Desfontaines, L'illustre Amalazonthe (Paris, 1645), p. 10. This novel is frequently attributed to Cérisiers despite the fact that the title-page gives the author as le sieur Des Fontaines. There are three reasons, however, why the author was more likely to be the actor and playwright, Desfontaines: (i) the novel includes an episode (see below, p. 118) out of which Desfontaines had already made a play, Alcidiane ou les Quatre Rivaux (1643); (ii) it reveals a leaning towards stoicism which was totally alien to Cérisiers (see below p. 89); (iii) Desfontaines liked to include the adjective 'illustre' in his titles, cf. Eurimédon ou l'Illustre Pirate, l'Illustre Olympie, L'Illustre Comédién. He was associated with Molière's 'Illustre Théâtre.'


91. cf. the distinction made by P-H. Simon between the hero, the great man and the superman (Le Domaine héroïque des lettres françaises, Paris, 1963, pp. 76 et seq.); cf. also Braun, 'Polysemie du concept de héros', Héroïsme et création littéraire..., pp. 79-28. It should be noted that the hero in the heroic novel is a direct descendant of the heroes of romance rather than of epic heroes in that he has no national or ethnic significance, generally lives in a vague, ill-defined world and lacks a tragic dimension; cf. Magendie, Le Roman français, p. 235.
There are essential differences between the kind of hero offered by the heroic novel and in the other major forms of seventeenth-century novel, however. What sets the heroic novel apart from the Greek romances and their derivatives is that its hero always sets out to impose himself on the world rather than suffering a series of coups de fortune. His will is what drives him on and it always brings him through victorious at the end. When fortune seems to turn against him, he responds energetically and determinedly, and forces circumstances to second his design.

The central difference between the heroic novel and the romance of chivalry of the Amadis type lies in the quality of the hero's response to those around. In Amadis and its successors, the hero is only one energetic element in a world which contains other positive figures, such as giants, sorcerers and dwarfs. Généreux knights do not fight against each other, except in tournaments, because there are enough ignoble opponents for them to deal with, such as the tyrant Arcalaus who feeds his prisoners on salty bacon with no water, ambushes wandering knights and abducts ladies, but who is basically cowardly and begs for mercy when his men have been defeated. The code of courtoisie only applies between knights who live by the chivalric oath, not between such knights and anyone else they may encounter, and enemies are disposed of in any way that suggests itself at the time, if necessary by the aid of a magician or fairy. There is, too, a certain moral ambiguity apparent in these romances. The giant Gandalac, 'un Geant si horrible, qu'il n'y avoit homme qui à le voir ne fust surpris de tres grand'paour', who steals Galaor, the brother of Amadis, nonetheless appears later on fighting alongside Amadis in the army of King Lisvart. Amadis fights the giant Balan who has killed a knight for no good reason - 'je crains la condition des

92. Le Tiers Livre de Amadis de Gaule (Paris, 1547), fol.XXX et seq.  
93. Le Premier Livre..., fol. XIII.
Geans, lesquelz peu communément sont gouvernez par raison, ains de furie & dure cruauté\textsuperscript{94} - but subsequently befriends him. Astramond, a pagan giant twelve feet tall, behaves in a thoroughly arrogant and unheroic way, killing enemies who have begged for mercy, carrying off a ten-year-old princess and cursing heaven and the gods.\textsuperscript{95} He appears in Constantinople and challenges Amadis de Gaule (well advanced in years by this stage) but has to admit himself beaten.\textsuperscript{96} He is thereupon given a royal reception and, after becoming Christian, is eventually made Emperor of Ethiopia.\textsuperscript{97} The implication here is that it is not the man himself who matters so much as the nature of the feats he has accomplished and that anyone who is not behaving in an obviously wicked way is entitled to be considered heroic by virtue of his valour.

In the heroic novel, the hero's physical feats are secondary to his moral status. As Scudéry put it, 'ce n'est point par les choses de dehors ; ce n'est point par les caprices du destin, que je veux juger de luy ; c'est par les mouvemens de son ame & par les choses qu'il dit.'\textsuperscript{98} As a result, his opponents are no longer wicked. Heroic novels contain a series of combats between characters who share the highest ideals of justice and courtesy, whose conceptions of virtue and générosité are identical, but whose interests have, perhaps temporarily, overlapped. They are enemies only in the sense that each is trying to assert his superiority over the other, but they by no means desire the annihilation of the other. When the fighting is over, the combat is one of magnanimity: who can treat the other with the greater chivalry? They can offer each other respect and friendship because they both belong to the universal commonwealth of courtesy and générosité which unites all those, in whatever country or continent they may be and in whatever age in history, who aspire to the highest calling of man, the heroic bearing of arms. The same norms of honour

\textsuperscript{94.} Le Quatriesme Livre d'Amadis de Gaule (Paris, 1555), fol. XC.
\textsuperscript{95.} Du Verdier, Le Romant des romans, Vol. V.
\textsuperscript{96.} Vol. VI.
\textsuperscript{97.} Vol. VII.
\textsuperscript{98.} Ibrahim, Preface.
and politeness are found in ancient Persia and Greece, classical Rome, medieval Denmark and modern Turkey. Fighting therefore becomes not so much a matter of good against evil, innocence against injustice (though it sometimes is), but a morally neutral expression of personal prowess and thence a contributory factor towards gloire.

The hero in the romances of chivalry was heroic because he had fought and won. He was a conqueror who had received his laurels; his heroic status was a consequence of action. For the new hero, the situation is reversed. Fighting is a consequence of being a hero. For him, heroism is a state, not a goal. He fights because he is a hero and has to demonstrate that he possesses the necessary qualities, and the only valid way of establishing moral superiority is against an opponent on the same moral level, who by definition cannot be evil. The point is illustrated by an episode in Mitridate. A stranger (who turns out to be Mitridate) has killed six out of eight of Pyrrhus' men who had tried to rob him. Pyrrhus gives him the remaining two to punish as he sees fit, but the stranger lets them go and asks Pyrrhus to pardon them. It is this gesture of magnanimity which validates the stranger's bravery and marks him out as a true hero: 'Pyrrhus n'avoit jusques alors reconnu sa vertu que par des marques exterieures & qui pouvoient tromper ; mais il ne balança plus sur l'estime qu'il en devoit faire, quand il vit cet excez de generosite.'

The general pattern of the nature of heroism was agreed on by all the writers of heroic novels. There were however areas of heroism which had varied interpretations put on them, depending on the author's view of what heroism entailed. It is these differences of interpretation, made apparent in the type of episode imagined and the use made of the terminology of heroism, which will be considered in the next chapter.

CHAPTER II
The Area of Debate

The trauma of the Religious Wars was still affecting the French mind long after the cessation of hostilities. In the first half of the seventeenth century, many writers reveal an intermittent mood of pessimism about the state of the world. For Balzac, 'le Monde a perdu son innocence il y a long-temps. Nous sommes dans la corruption des Siecles, & dans la caducité de la Nature. Tout est foible, tout est malade, dans les Assemblées des Hommes.' Moralists frequently point to ambition and avarice as the besetting sins of the age. Chevreau's view reflected the outlook of many: 'Jamais on ne se servit plus avantageusement de la liberté pour mal faire : La coutume authorise tous les crimes que les loix defendent ; & pour treuver de l'innocence & de la pureté parmi les hommes, il faudroit remonter jusques au premier âge du monde. Le vice est tellement respecté, qu'il a par tout des amis & des partisans: ... Les plus saints d'aujourd'hui ont l'ame noire, & les mains souillées. ... [L'avarice] est la cause & l'appui de la corruption du siècle.' This is not some reforming cleric writing, but a soldier and man of letters who moved amongst the polite circles of Parisian society and wrote novels for their entertainment.

It was often felt that man's baser side had infected the system in which he lived, so that the general movement was one of degeneration. Man left to his own devices is

3. The political writers generally adopted this position. Richelieu saw no point in trying to reform the state machinery since its imperfections had become a matter of habit (Testament politique, ed.cit.,p.254); to Silhon, the days when man worked zealously for good were gone for ever (Le Ministre d'Estat, Paris, 1665,p.158); Naudé considered the great European empires to be at just the age at which they were...
incapable of steering a straight course, it was believed, and if presented with a period of peace will work against his own interests:

Nous-mêmes, par le trop d'aise où nous nous sommes veus plongez, par l'abondance & les delices causez d'une profonde & longue paix, pendant l'heureux Regne de Henry le Grand ... comme insensez & enemis de nous-mêmes, courant à nostre propre ruine, nous avons tiré nostre malheur des mesmes choses qui devoient donner la naissance & affermir de tout point nostre bonheur.4

Thus war, though horrific, is a constant corrective necessary to keep society going in the right direction: battles are 'des Seignées publiques de ces Royaumes malades, à qui l'Ambition donne la Fievre, & qu'il faut décharger de leur mauvais Sang.'5 The natural state of man is not peace but, because of his weaknesses, peace plus war, the one correcting the other: 'bien que la guerre soit mere de toutes les cruautez les plus inhumaines & barbares du monde, elle est toutesfois mere de justice, pour punir les meschans, les rebelles, & les usurpateurs.'6

Not everyone was so pessimistic. There were those who took a more charitable view of the positive features of man and who believed that, though man had fallen from his original state, he still had in him the seeds of universal love which made him want to live in society with his fellow-men. The interdependence imposed on man by his social nature provided an opportunity for him to transcend to a certain extent his natural egotism by contributing to the good of the community.

Both these concepts of man, which may be loosely termed pessimistic and optimistic respectively, allowed a belief in the existence of heroes and supermen. In terms of the pessimistic view, the hero represents the exception to the general rule, the man who is not subject to the normal degeneration which afflicts the rest of humanity. He consequently tends to be seen as something of a moral island, cut off from other men and having no real contact with them, so that all they can do is admire from a distance:

Qu'il y a de plaisir à voir les saillies
d'un esprit genereux : C'est un Aigle
volant, qui mesprisant la terre qu'il
regarde par dedain, n'a des yeux que pour
evisager le Ciel, & se mire dans
l'esclat des Astres & du Soleil. 8

This kind of hero has certain affinities with the stoic sage in that his heroism exists more or less for its own sake, an end in itself, though this is not to say that he does no more than contemplate his own virtue: the hero is always a man of action and needs to have an audience to whom he can display his virtue and so increase his gloire.

For the partisans of the more optimistic view, the hero was not isolated from the rest of mankind, but was one of 'ces hommes qui semblent n'exceller au dessus des autres que pour leur bien & n'estre bien partagez dans les avantages du Ciel que pour en faire part avantageusement à ceux du commun' 9, an idealised projection of man who never loses the links which bind him to his fellows. His heroism is seen as a combination of all those elements which give grounds for hope about human nature, extended to the highest level compatible with human limitations. He is not a separate species but an exceptional specimen who puts his exceptional qualities at the service of the community, like Guérin de Bouscal's Hercules who '[caressoit] les affligez avec la mesme main qui domptoit les monstres' and who 'voulut partir de la Capadoce, disant qu'il ne pouvoit sans honte

The pessimistic view puts a premium on self-assertion, the hero being primarily concerned with establishing his own gloire and maintaining it at all costs. It derives from a somewhat Hobbesian view of society. The natural tendency to want to impose oneself on others, chiefly from a vain esteem of oneself; the right to use all the means and do all the actions without which one cannot preserve oneself; a state of nature in which profit is the measure of right and each man is constantly at war with all other men: all these, expounded by Hobbes, are merely an unflattering statement of the same will to power, self-preservation and self-perpetuation which, in the egocentric heroic ethic, are expressed in a terminology borrowed partly from Christian altruistic morality — vertu, devoir, générosité, etc.

Such a philosophy was entirely incompatible with the more optimistic view of man, according to which heroism only had any validity in so far as it made a contribution to the good of the world. It only existed in terms of other people, since it could not be said to have come into being until some recipient had experienced it. Guérin de Bouscal demonstrated the unacceptable nature of the type of heroism which existed for nothing but its own advantage in his Antiope in the person of Sinis, a brigand who lives in the forests of ancient Greece. Like Hobbes' natural man, Sinis judges

11. This is the kind of egocentric ethic identified by Bénichou and Nadal as fundamental to Cornelian heroism.
12. Hobbes' views were known in France where he lived from 1640 to 1651, but they were often identified with those of Machiavelli or the libertins. For this reason, Sorbière found it prudent to include in his translation of De Givre, published in Amsterdam in 1649 under the title of Éléments philosophiques du citoyen, a note claiming that he did not agree with the author and expressing the hope that some Frenchman would undertake the task of refuting his views, even though Sorbière in fact felt a good deal of sympathy for Hobbes' ideas (see Sorberiana, Paris, 1694, Art. 'Hobbes'). Sorel mentions that Hobbes' principles were not generally accepted and that Fortin de la Hoguette's Éléments de la politique (Paris, 1663), in which he attempted to show that society and mutual help are the state of nature and that men have always been interdependent, was 'plus approuvé' (La Bibliothèque françoise, p. 62).
everything in terms of profit and power:

Je sçay bien que presque tous les hommes du siècle présent, & principalement les Grecs, trouvent beaucoup à redire à ma façon de vie, qu'ils ont introduit des Loix pour excuser la lâcheté & pour obscurcir la gloire de la valeur ; mais il m'est glorieux d'avoir toute la terre pour ennemie, & de ne craindre point toute la terre. Les hommes doivent vivre selon les loix de la nature : par ces loix les plus forts doivent estre les maistres des autres, toutes les ordonnances qui renversent cet ordre naturel sont temeraires, il n'appartient point à des enfans de changer les constitutions de leur mere ; D'où pensez-vous qu'aït procedé cette erreur de n'outrager point autrui, quoï qu'il en déût revenir du profit : la foiblesses des hommes l'a sans doute fait glisser dans le commerce ; l'amour que nous avons pour nous-memes est si violent, qu'il n'y a rien qui le puisse divertir de la recherche des choses qu'il desire, que la crainte de rencontrer celles qu'il fuit ; aussi nous ne nous retenons jamais d'outrager autrui que de peur qu'on nous outrage nous mesme : & si nous n'avons pas cette crainte, nous n'avons pas cette retenue.

On n'a baillé des armes à cette Deesse (scil. la Justice) que pour donner de la terreur ; doncques ceux qui ne sçauroient craindre ne sont pas de sa jurisdiction, & son pouvoir s'étend seulement, comme j'ay desja dit, sur les esprits timides. Est-il quelque loy qu'on ne puisse soupçonner d'interest ? L'avantage que les hommes se sont donné sur les femmes parce qu'ils ont esté les plus forts, n'est-ce pas un reste de cette loy naturelle, ou une marque bien visible de la force de l'interest ? Le pouvoir que les Roys se sont reservez sur leurs sujets, les grands sur les petits, les peres sur les enfans, les maistres sur les esclaves, ne sont-ce pas des exceptions qui font voir que la loy n'est pas toûjours egalle, & qu'elle se regle bien souvent par la volonte des plus forts ? Mais quel est l'homme qui ne se fait un droit de sa volonte ?

The value of these theories is indicated by the way of life they oblige Sinis to lead. He lives alone (except for his daughter who does not share his beliefs) in a cave in the forest, living by hunting and robbing travellers. He knows no-one other than another brigand some miles away and he has to be constantly on the alert against enemies. The moral independence he prizes so much has produced a life which is nasty and brutish. He is not even left with the possibility of joining a society of like-minded superior beings since the same anti-social law of power would apply, though he does feel a certain affinity with other valiant men:

Je vous fais ce discours ... pour vous desabuser en particulier d'une créance générale, & pour justifier l'éternelle guerre que je fais aux hommes. Ce n'est pas qu'il me fâche d'être accusé par des lâches ; mais il me seroit fâcheux que les vaillans, au nombre desquels je vous conte, eussent des pensées désavantageuses de ma vie.\textsuperscript{14}

However, a sufficient comment on this is provided by the fact that shortly after this speech he pushes his interlocutor over a precipice. For Guerin, no way of life could be considered admirable if it ignored obligations and asserted only its privileges.

The principles on which a worthwhile society and a proper appreciation of heroism must be founded are set out later in the same novel by Theseus, who explains that the natural love of man for his fellows can be used to destroy the tyranny of self-interest: the precepts of altruism reinforce the sentiments instilled by nature so that the properly educated would consider themselves to have committed a crime if they missed an opportunity to do good.\textsuperscript{15} These principles produce a society in which the highest manifestations of heroism can appear but where the hero never loses sight of what he owes to his fellow-men. He corresponds closely to the ideal set out by Couraud for his Christian

\textsuperscript{14} id., I,107-8.
\textsuperscript{15} id., I,283-5. A similar argument is used by the Prince d'Egine (IV,137-8); cf. Ariane, p. 600.
hero, 'dans lequel l'humanité & la religion ; bien faire aux hommes & bien servir Dieu ; se rendre aimable à eux & à luy ; en un mot dans lequel perpetuer sa memoire en obligeant les creatures & en obeissant au Createur, feront les deux parties de sa vie heroïque.'

Though few writers were as explicit as Guérin de Bouscal, there were others who evidently felt that an entirely self-centred ideal of heroism was not acceptable and who wanted to prevent the hero from turning himself into a moral island. It is possible to talk of a debate as to the nature of heroism between those who held to an egocentric ideal and those who postulated an altruistic ethic, the standpoint of the author being indicated by the kind of action he considered praiseworthy and the interpretation he gave to the terminology of heroism, for the frequent use of certain terms such as gloire, générosité and vertu is a marked characteristic of the heroic novel as it is of the heroic theatre. Earlier novels had used these terms more sparingly or without the aim of building up a heroic atmosphere: Boisrobert, for instance, uses gloire very little in his Histoire indienne and généreux mainly as a courtesy epithet.

Those scholars who have studied the manifestations of the heroic ideal in the seventeenth century stress the importance of a correct interpretation of such terminology for an understanding of heroism and point out that it had already changed its meaning by the end of the century. Definitions have been put forward of its various meanings in Corneille's plays and modifications offered with reference to other forms of literature. An analysis of the use of the terms made in the novel reveals that on the whole they are applied in a similar way to their use in the theatre but that there are distinct attempts by some writers to impose an alternative definition of heroism. Each of the main qualities will be considered in turn to determine the different values attributed to them.

16. Le Héros chrétien, pp. 9-10.
18. cf. Sutcliffe, Guez de Balzac et son temps, pp. 120-31.
Of all the qualities associated with heroism, générosité is the most essential. It is the one which enables the hero to maintain the position consonant with his own and the world's view of him and thus remain true to himself. The inborn propensity to greatness which drives him on relies on a 'grandeur de courage' without which no-one can be considered heroic and which is in fact often used synonymously with générosité. It is the external manifestation of moral striving. Differences of interpretation arise when it is a question of deciding what the aim of such striving ought to be.19

On the one hand, if the hero is seen as morally responsible to no-one except himself, then générosité need be no more than straightforward courage, since this is all that is ultimately necessary to allow him to defend his prerogatives:

les hommes généreux ... n'apprehendent jamais rien, ils sont préparé à tout, & s'ils craignent, c'est plutôt pour leur réputation que pour leur personne.20

Thus it is possible for men to be described as généreux even though they are cruel, tyrannical, discourteous or devious, simply because they show courage in defending their cause, whether it can be approved of morally or not:

encor qu'il ait quelque cruauté, il est pourtant généreux.21

la réponse d'un généreux courage estoit toute preste (from the tyrannical and unjust Admiral).22

la surprise l'estonna plus que le danger du combat, & comme il (the unchivalrous slanderer Zadarem) estoit véritablement généreux, après quelques paroles nous en vinmes aux mains.23

parmy les Turcs il y en a presque toujours eu de résolus & de généreux, ils se sont servis de la ruze, de la force & de la vaillance pour se maintenir.24

19. Descartes' definition (Les Passions de l'âme, Art. 153) stops at this point : générosité is a determination to undertake 'toutes les choses qu'il jugera être les meilleures.'


22. Le Polémire, p. 270.
This sort of générosité can even arise out of hatred:

une même affection jeta dans leur ame ces profondes racines d'une haine qui leur fist entreprendre plusieurs généreux desseins sur leur vie.26

si vous avez quelque haine secrète pour moy, vangez-vous généreusement.27

There are some writers who never go beyond this point in their use of the term, such as the authors of Alcide, La Prazimène and Le Polémire: they are concerned only to depict the courage displayed in the immediate interests of self.

Exponents of the more altruistic view of heroism, on the other hand, see générosité as necessarily attached to ethical and social values. They set relationships with others higher than the demands of self-aggrandisement and lay particular stress on sympathy and help for those in trouble:

une ame généreuse est hors de son element, lors qu'elle est contrainte, ou de se ressentir des injures qu'on luy a faites, ou de refuser de la compassion à ceux qui sont tombez, quy que justement, en quel­que infortune.28

un esprit généreux ne peut se resoudre à oppresser les foibles.29

Only those actions which benefit others can be qualified as généreuses. 'Le Prince n'est pas généreux qui travaille plus ... pour son interest que pour celuy des autres,' declares Du Bail.30 Gomberville's hero displays 'cette généreuse humanité par laquelle vous entrez dans les senti­mens de vos ennemis & prenez part à leurs disgraces.'31

Thésée reminds himself that 'la generosite n'est pas

(Scanderberg has) une générosité brutale, qui le portoit dans les perils sans les connoistre.25

24. Scanderberg, I,496.
27. Le Grand Cyrus, IV,237.
29. Ibrahim, IV,599.
entière, si elle est mêlée de quelqu'autre interest que de celuy de la personne qui l'a fait (i.e. has caused it to be exercised).' His altruism is acknowledged by others: 'comme vous estes parfaitement genereux, il vous suffit de sçavoir que j'ay besoin de vostre secours, pour croire que j'en suis digne,' declares Egée.32 Cyrus is told that 'c'est estre bien genereux de vouloir plustost vous intèresser dans les malheurs d'autrui que dans les vostres.'33 In short, it is the concern for others which turns courage into générosité.34

Though it is not his primary aim, the hero who has a genuine concern for others, especially his enemies, reaps considerable rewards in terms of esteem. Pure self-interest usually has to give way before altruistic générosité. Pyrrhus, concerned with his own gloire, refuses to allow his enemy Ptolomée to arrange to have his wounds tended. Straton argues with him: 'Est-ce que vous ne voulez pas devoir quelque chose à ceux que vous avez haïs? Considerez, Seigneur, qu'en ne l'acceptant pas, vous n'estes pas moins obligé à leur générosité, que si vous en aviez ressenty les effects, & que vous ne pouvez à présent mourir que leur redevable,' but to no avail. Ptolomée, however, asks him to recover as a favour and at this, Pyrrhus is won over: 'la générosité du Roy d'Égypte l'avoit tellement touché,

32. Antiope, I, 324-5, 367.
34. cf. the definition given by Le Moyne (La Gallerie des femmes fortes, p. 209) : 'La Générosité à la bien définir est une grandeur de Courage, ou une eslevation d'Esprit, par laquelle une Ame eslevée au dessus de l'Interest & de l'Utile se porte inviolablement & sans detour au Devoir qui est laborieux & à l'Honneste qui couste & qui paroit difficile.'
Gloire

**Gloire** is the hero's reward for action. He achieves it by being successful or by imposing himself morally on any situation in which he may find himself. Those for whom heroism was largely a question of moral independence depicted their heroes devoting all their energies to the pursuit of **gloire** and subordinating all other aims to it:

d'obliger nos ennemis à publier nostre gloire sans contrainte, ce doit estre la plus belle de nos esperances, & la plus noble récompence de la vertu.36

Every action is referred to the ideal vision which the hero maintains within himself; every action must help him to keep the position which he sees himself already occupying. **Gloire** is thus elevated to the level of an absolute; the hero acknowledges only one essential element in the order of things—himself—and the rest of the world has to be made to fit in with this simple plan.

Since the heroic novel was concerned almost exclusively with military leaders, the area in which **gloire** manifested itself in the novel tended to be dominated by the battle-field or tournament, though acts of unselfishness and

35. Mitridate, I, 272-4. Courtoisie, a term much used in the romances of chivalry, had all but disappeared from the heroic novel, générosité having replaced it. Magnanimité is closely allied to générosité and has equally strong moral overtones. For Gomberville it is 'cette supreme & heroïque magnanimité qui acheve tousjours ce qu'elle commence, & fait faire les grandes actions par le seul motif de la vertu'; 'l'Oubly des injures receuës ... est le supreme degré de la valeur, & le plus esclatant caractère de la vraye magnanimité' (La Cytherée, 2nd edn., 4 vols., Paris, 1642, II, 401, 135). Marandé sees it working alongside générosité towards a goal of inner fulfilment, beyond any suspicion of pride or presumption (Abbrégé curieux et familier de toute la philosophie, Lyon, 1648, p. 792). La Serre puts it at a higher level than générosité because of the ease with which the latter can be counterfeited (Le Portrait de la Reyne, Paris, 1644, p. 116; cf. Ibrahim, II, 832, Cléopâtre, I, 68, Le Grand Cyrus, III, 652) and indeed the term tended to be used by those who defined générosité in terms of physical courage to indicate that extra moral dimension which ensured that courage would never be used in a questionable cause.

altruism also attracted gloire. Novelists must have been aware, however, of the questions raised by moralists as to whether gloire was a legitimate end in itself or whether its only value was as a spur to virtue. There were those who were prepared to accord it an important place in the scale of moral values. Chevreau, despite his stoic leanings, rejects the idea that virtue must necessarily be its own end and reward. Virtue in fact needs gloire to illumine it:

\[
\text{si l'on nous ostoit la gloire, nous ne pourrions pas distinguer la vertu d'avec le vice, ni ce qui nous est permis d'avec ce qui nous est défendu.}^{37}
\]

A similar argument is used by Montausier in Chapelain's Dialogue de la gloire.\(^{38}\) Those who assume that man will be virtuous without this stimulus are being hopelessly unrealistic, it is suggested. One hero at least concurs, basing his thirst for gloire on a profound disillusionment with the rest of the human race: Polexandre assures the généreux Zelmatide, who has advised him not to bother justifying himself since his conscience is clear, that he would do as he says if all men were like him, 'mais quand je considèré que le plus grand nombre des hommes est composé de sots & de meschans ; & d'ailleurs, que nostre reputation est servilement attachée aux sentimens de cette multitude ; je croy que nous sommes obligez de tesmoigner ce que nous sommes, & tiens que quand on vit parmy des gens qui sont incapables de la souveraine Sagesse, il est plus vicieux d'aller contre la coutume que contre la vertu.'\(^{39}\)

The limiting factor as far as the moralists were concerned was that gloire requires a balance to be maintained between the internal ideal which the hero strives to achieve and the external view of him in relation to the accepted moral norms: 'se voir également accompli en soy-mesme,

---

37. L'Escole du sage, pp. 126, 128.
Such a balance can only be ensured if the hero has the necessary self-knowledge and this in its turn is dependent on his resisting the temptation to pass from *amour de soi* to *amour-propre*.

*Amour de soi* is perfectly legitimate and indeed a necessary quality in anyone who is to stand out amongst men. It enables him to confront the world and fulfil the demands made by his position. It is an acknowledgement of his true worth:

> S’il y a du mérite en nous, & que nous ne le voyons point, c’est être aveugle ; si nous le voyons sans le vouloir confesser, c’est être ingrat.

The approach to self-knowledge must be calm and detached if it is to produce the right results: when a just appraisal of the self has been achieved, it will lead to a mode of life in which consideration for others plays a central part. Camus goes so far as to claim that *amour de soi* is an element in charity and is expressly commanded by God's law.

*Amour-propre*, on the other hand, arises when the individual develops a false perspective of himself and loses his awareness of the demands of the world around. He gives in to pride (*orgueil*) which makes him feel that only he is of importance and that his own worth is greater than it actually is: 'que l'amour propre est un grand Imposteur! il nous depeint nos merites plus grands & nos defauts plus petits qu'ils ne sont.'

---

40. Madeleine de Scudéry, 'Discours de la gloire', *Recueil de quelques pieces de prose et de vers faits (sic) pour les prix qui avoient esté proposez de la part de l'Academie Francoise en 1671* (Paris, 1671), p. 9. This point forms the basis of her definition of *gloire*; cf. 'La Gloire a besoin d'autruy ; car un homme seul & absolument inconnu à tout le monde n'auroit point de *gloire*, quelque mérite qu'il pût avoir. Mais elle a aussi besoin de nous-mêmes ; parce que si elle ne subsistoit qu'en autruy, il n'y auroit rien qui la rendist nostre, & qui l'attachast veritablement à nous' (p. 8). Madeleine de Scudéry's essay won the prize.


personal advancement and loses sight of the true relationship of the individual to the creation of which he is a part:

Tout amour propre est bien amour nostre, mais tout amour nostre, c'est à dire, de nous mesme n'est pas amour propre. ... par l'amour propre j'entends le vicieux amour de nous mesme, ce foyer du peche, ... cet amour par lequel nous nous arres­ttons volontairement & deliberement à nous mesmes & à la creature, au mespris & au prejudice de la gloire du Creator.
l'amour nostre ... est toujours ... de sa nature rapportable à la fin derniere, au lieu que l'amour propre n'y est jamais ny rapporté, ny rapportable, & ainsi toujours injuste.44

This distinction between amour de soi and amour-propre leads on to a further important distinction between gloire and ambition. The latter was one of the major passions to which the hero was expected to be susceptible, but it was at the same time dangerous because it could take over his moral sense and force him into unheroic postures. In particular, it could lead him into thinking that the end was more important than the means. So, just as amour de soi requires the individual to have a proper appreciation of the qualities he possesses, gloire is only found where the aim is commensurate with the abilities deployed to achieve it and where only morally acceptable means are used. If the aim is beyond the scope of the individual and is not in some way in the general interest of man, then gloire has given way to ambition:

Ce desir de gloire vient donc d'un courage relevé qui par le chemin de la vertu se fait un passage aux grandes charges ; il ne tente que ce qui répond à ses desseins, il ne s'attache qu'au bien public, & dans ses honneurs il fait confesser, quelque chose qu'on lui donne, qu'il en merite encore davantage. Mais l'ambition se jette dans les dignitez par toutes sortes de moyens, elle ne consulte point s'ils sont permis ou defendus.45

44. Camus, op.cit., pp. 329-30, 442.
l'ambitieux ne mesure point son dessein à ses forces, & n'emploie pour réussir que des moyens défendus. ... l'on voit qu'il n'est pas permis à toutes sortes de personnes de butter aux grands honor- eurs ; il faut bien savoir ses forces, ou autrement, c'est ambition. 46

Gloire must be the unsolicited reward for action undertaken in some virtuous cause; if the action is carried out for the sake of acquiring gloire, it is the product of ambition, 'le défaut d'un courage bas, puisque l'on se déclare inférieur à tout ce que l'on désire au dessus de soi. Une ame n'est éminente que lors qu'elle voit tout sous elle ; à mesme qu'elle pretend s'eslever, elle publie sa bassesse. 47 Amasis proves himself to be such a base man when he sets out to usurp the throne he does not merit : 'il n'escouta ny la générosité, ny la raison, ny mesme la veritable gloire, qui ne se trouve pas à regner par une injuste voye ; & se laissa emporter aveuglement à l'ambition toute seule.' 48 Desmarets carefully defines gloire in terms which exclude all ambition but retain the element of moral superiority:

la gloire n'est autre chose que le plaisir & l'honneur que l'on reçoit de faire ce que la raison ordonne. Si l'on est victoireux, on acquiert la gloire à pardonner aux vaincus, à les traiter avec honneur, & à leur rendre quelquefois libéralement la liberté : si on est vaincu, la gloire s'acquiert à souffrir constamment les blessures, la captivité, & le visage du vainqueur, qui est le plus dur à souffrir ; à se montrer honnête & sage autant ou plus que luy s'il se peut, à luy faire voir que le coeur au moins n'est pas vaincu, & que l'on peut encore égaler ou vaincre son ennemy en quelque chose. 49

A number of writers of heroic novels chose to ignore the fact that the gap between gloire and ambition was dangerously narrow and extolled the greatness of heroes who were interested only in their own reputation, but on the whole there was an awareness that the elevation of

46. Dubosc, Les Femmes heroïques, II, 91-2 ; cf. La Mothe le Vayer, Oeuvres, II, 412.
47. Céziziers, Le Heros françois, pp. 172-3.
48. Le Grand Cyrus, VI, 575 ; cf. id., II, 1149.
personal gloire to the level of an absolute was undesirable and that the hero lost none of his superhuman quality if he showed he had a concern for the claims of the world around. Araxez makes a point of letting his enemy, whom he is freeing, know that he is 'ne se proposant pas mesme la gloire pour la fin de son action, mais l'action elle-mesme.'

Coriolan feels as much compassion for the misfortunes of others as love of his own gloire and disregards his own interests to help the afflicted.

Particular attention was often paid to the hero's abilities as a military tactician, since the traditional heroic practice (still seen in Alcide, L'Illustre Amalazonthe and Mitridate) of spending an entire battle heaping up honours and gloire for personal prowess with never a thought for the overall conduct of the battle was felt to be out of keeping with the character required in a hero.

Scudéry takes care to stress that Ibrahim, though capable of individual heroic actions, also kept a firm hold on the development of the battle as a whole:

Il empescha le Bassa Sinan d'estre tué, en donnant un grand coup de cimterre à celuy qui l'alloit fraper : mais faisant le soldat en cette rencontre il ne laiss-oit pas d'agir en General d'Armée & d'avoir l'oeil à toutes choses. Tantost il envoyoit soustenir ceux qui en avoient besoin : une autre fois il y alloit en personne ; & joignant tout ensemble la prudence & la valeur, on peut dire que jamais deux hommes differents ne les ont si noblement exercées qu'Ibrahim tout seul les fit paroistre en cette occasion.

When the Christians come off worst in a tournament against the Saracens, they draw the appropriate moral:

Dieu avoit permis que l'ennemy demeurat victorieux, pour faire connoistre que bien souvent la vanité emporte des esprits vains & legers à rechercher des combats particuliers, au lieu que les hommes de coeur doivent reserver leur valeur pour la gloire & l'avantage du public.

---

50. La Cythérée, II,414.
52. Ibrahim, IV,490 ;cf. id., III,298, Ariane, p.667, Le Grand Cyrus, V,1268-9. François de Sales stressed the duc de Mercoeur's ability to carry out the 'office de cappitaine et soldat tout ensemble' in the latter's funeral oration (see J. Hennequin, 'Le Duc de Mercoeur d'après son oraison funèbre par François de Sales', Héroïsme et création littéraire ..., p.188).
Memnon and Oxiarte carry their personal rivalry onto the battlefield, with the result that the common cause begins to suffer.\(^{54}\) Golème, one of Scanderberg's generals, rides alone into a squadron of Turks to capture a flag and is nearly killed in the process: such an action would be laudable in an ordinary soldier but needs to be censured in a general:

\[
\text{Il faut donc dire que Golème fut heureux, mais non pas vaillant, puis qu'il y fut plus poussé par un sentiment d'honneur que par un sentiment de vertu, que le bien public le toucha moins que le sien propre, & que le profit qui devait revenir de cette action n'estoit pas si grand que le dommage qui pouvait revenir de la perte de sa vie.}^{55}
\]

---

54. Cassandre, IX,536, 555 et seq.
55. Scanderberg, I,315. Reservations in heroic novels about the dangers of allowing purely personal motives to dictate conduct in war evidently reflected similar reservations in real life. The episode in Cassandre mentioned above (IX,555 et seq.) parallels an incident during the Lens campaign of 1647, when Marshals de Rantsau and de Gassion, 'compétiteurs de gloire, ... toujours jaloux de la gloire l'un de l'autre et incompatibles, en sorte qu'ils se brouilloient souvent,' were leading separate columns. Both went forward alone to see whether the enemy was anywhere at hand and both came rushing back, having come across more than five hundred enemy soldiers on the top of a hill. Rantsau regained the head of his column, but Gassion was set upon. 'Mr le maréchal de Rantsaw malicieux, arrivé à la teste de la colonne qui continuoit d'avancer, voioit avec plaisir l'embaras de son compagnon,' and was only persuaded to help his rival when the Maréchal de Castelnau and the author impressed upon him the dangers to which he was exposing not only Gassion but the whole body of troops under his command (Mémoires de M. Millet, Bibl. Méjanes MS 153, fol. 136-7). Similarly, Condé's exploits were interpreted in various lights, depending on the attitude of the author towards gloire. To La Serre, he is a magnificent individualist, always in the thick of the battle, every stroke a mortal one, always ready to follow gloire wherever it may lead him (Les Sieges, les batailles, les victoires et les triomphes de Monseigneur le Prince de Condé, Paris, 1657, passim); but Charrrier is impressed by his ability to moderate his impetuousness when it is necessary for the cause he is serving (Les Lauriers d'Enguieu ou le parfait general d'armée, Paris, 1645, passim). Du Bois-Hus admires his superb gestures of defiance and the way he makes his troops forget themselves in the service of his gloire (Le Prince illustre, passim) but the Comparaison de M. le Prince et M. de Turenne notes approvingly Turenne's greater attachment to long-term advantages at the expense of his immediate reputation (Bibl. de l'Arsenal MS 3135, fol. 69-71).
Thus, though the acquiring of gloire was universally considered to be a legitimate aspiration in the heroic novel, there were those for whom it could not be simply a matter of self-fulfilment, the attainment of whatever goal the individual had set himself: it had to be achieved within the area prescribed by the interests of the community as a whole, an attitude in line with the altruistic version of the heroic ideal.

Vaillance

Vaillance is widely taken as the manifestation of courage required in the pursuit of gloire. It therefore has a close affinity to générosité and again, like gloire and générosité, was subject to interpretations stressing its more moral elements. This is particularly noticeable in the political writers who want to prove that heroic qualities are not necessarily limited to the sphere of physical action. Richelieu dissociates courage from vaillance so that he can claim it as an attribute of the statesman as well as of the general. 56 Balzac reinforces vaillance with intellectual capacity so that he who regulates the civil sphere can be put on the same level as the military leader. 57 Chevreau too stresses the part played by reason in his portrait of le Vaillant. 58

A certain amount of this modified meaning found its way into the heroic novel. Desmarets elevates vaillance to the point where it becomes an end in itself, almost on a level with gloire:

la vaillance n'a point de satisfaction qu'en soy-mesme ; & c'est ce que nous appelons honneur, qui n'est autre chose que la gloire qui est en nous de ne manquer jamais à ce que la vaillance nous ordonne, quelque disgrace qui puisse arriver; ... la victoire & les honneurs ne peuvent estre ses objects principaux, pource que ce ne sont pas des choses que l'on soit assuré d'acquerir. 59

57. Oeuvres, II, 420.
The episode of Golème in Scanderberg illustrates the fact that true vaillance involves far more than mere courage: 'son ardeur fit bien voir que les plus courageux ne sont pas quelquefois les plus vaillans, que c'est peu d'avoir un bien si on n'en sçait pas user.'

Vertu

Though vertu is acknowledged by seventeenth-century writers to be one of the primary qualities in heroism, there is a certain constraint on their part in deciding what exactly it involved because of the strong Christian overtones inherent in the term which frequently militated against the other aspects of heroism (e.g. François de Sales asserts that vertu practised for the sake of gloire alone is not genuine). Those who undertake to define vertu héroïque often reveal uncertainty as to what it consisted of, other than that it is somehow specially elevated. For Dubosc, the difference between heroic and ordinary virtue is that the former has 'une certaine grandeur, ou une eminence qu'elle adjoute aux autres.' Le Moyne sees its object as 'l'Honneste considéré dans la plus haute élévation qu'il puisse avoir.' Cériziers suggests that 'la Vertu s'appelle Héroïque quand elle est arrivée jusques à nous eslever au dessus du commun, & qu'elle fait un estat moyen entre Dieu & les hommes ordinaires.'

The one aspect which is generally agreed upon is that vertu presupposes action. The moralists all stress the point and writers of heroic novels agree: 'la vertu de l'homme

63. La Gallerie des femmes fortes, p. 311.
64. Le Philosophe françois, III, 317.
consiste toute en l'action. Some interpret vertu as no more than a source of strength which enables the hero to pursue his aims, whatever they may be. It is synonymous with energy, like the virtù of Machiavelli: it is constantly poised ready to work for self-fulfilment. Any action it initiates must be spontaneous, and a failure to respond with action leads to the unheroic situation of being morally subject to fortune, like Mélinote who 'languiss-oit abbatu d'ennuy, sans aucune apparence de vertu' instead of trying to 'se relever par les sentimens de la vertu, qui enseigne à mespriser les accidens humains.'

It is possible therefore for vertu to imply no more than great strength and courage: 'leur seule vertu exter-mina les ennemis.' It could be a source of fortitude, moderating despair in affliction. However, the term usually contained within itself an element which gave it an added moral dimension. Without being assimilated to any specific ethic, it presupposed in the hero an ability to concentrate all his force on the attainment of a particular objective which is seen by him as a duty. This duty might be envisaged simply as an obligation to maintain an image of oneself or one's social group. From those who demanded a greater awareness in the hero of the claims of humanity as a whole, on the other hand, there came the suggestion that the better part of vertu was not courage - 'cette aveugle ardeur, qui procede du temperament & non pas de la vertu' - but the rectitude of the intention, judged in terms of its contribution to the good of mankind. Vertu acted as the bridge between the hero and the rest of the community from which he was inevitably in some measure set apart: 'les personnes qui portent ses marques se discernent

65. La Cythérée, II, 114.
69. Antiope, I, 493.
& se separent du commun par ce puissant caractere qu'elle a imprime en elles.' It is the quality which prevents him from developing too great an opinion of himself. Its commitment to a sense of duty may lead it to overrule other heroic inclinations. One particular feature which is referred to frequently as being indispensable to it is an ability to show gratitude, since this indicates immediately that the hero does not consider himself to be outside the normal world of human relationships, obligations and interdependence: he shows his solidarity with his fellows by 'une juste reconnoissance, qui est le premier mouvement d'une vraye vertu.'

The area of debate amongst those novelists who affirmed the existence of heroism as an idealised expression of man's potential covered its application rather than its essence. Both sides would have agreed with Herminius that 'pour faire qu'une action soit toute heroïque, il faut non seulement que le motif en soit juste, mais encore que les moyens en soient nobles & innocens.' The divergence was between those who wanted to raise personal aspirations and the individual's moral independence to the level of an absolute, and those who saw the need to relate the individual to some sort of ethical order. This is not to say that the second type had a social conscience in the modern sense or was necessarily imbued with any more Christian charity. It is rather that the exponents of the former view, amongst whom may be counted Lemaire, d'Astorgues and Deschaussée, set out to depict an exceptional being who operates on a different plane from the rest of mankind, whereas those who expound the latter view, including Chevreau, Guérin de Bouscal and Segrais, present a model to be not only admired but imitated.

70. Cassandre, III, 6.
71. Antiope, IV, 146.
72. Le Grand Cyrus, I, 68.
The insistence shown by so many writers on a correct interpretation of the terminology considered above suggests that the heroic novel needs to be studied in the context of the search for man's moral identity, Bénichou's 'débat sur l'excellence ou la médiocrité de la nature humaine' and Sutcliffe's 'effort pour canaliser les aspirations des hommes à la grandeur.' Those who so avidly read heroic novels no doubt needed to believe in a world in which Croondate and Cyrus could exist, and the freedom embodied by the literary hero might well have seemed attractive to people with everyday lives to lead, but as some novelists pointed out, it brought with it its own responsibilities and obligations - self-restraint, the suppression of false grandeur, allegiance to a code of social ethics. To those who proposed an ideal of aristocratic self-fulfilment based solely on fidelity to the individual's image of himself, these other novelists opposed a kind of heroism based on duty towards the society which had made it possible.

To a certain extent, therefore, the concept of heroism in the novel appears to have been affected by the conflict in France between those who still maintained the supremacy of the values associated with the aristocratic class-myth and those who affirmed the need for a new order. Direct political comment is not found, and it would be wrong to identify the latter view with the theory of state expounded by Richelieu and his spokesmen. It is rather a concern that the individual should moderate his personal aspirations and submit them to a generally applicable code of honnêteté. He could certainly allow générosité, gloire and vertu to carry him on to greatness but it must never be at the expense of his fellow beings.

75. Bénichou, Morales du Grand Siècle, p. 9; Sutcliffe, Guez de Balzac et son temps, p. 8.
76. cf. Sutcliffe (op.cit., p. 169) : 'Le conflit est ouvert entre une éthique qui prend appui sur la personne, et une éthique plus largement socialisée qui tend à méconnaître les particularismes.'
In one respect at least, the question of the morality involved in the relating of means to ends, the heroic novel was fundamentally opposed to the principles on which Richelieu's state was founded. It is this area of prudence which will be considered in the next chapter.
CHAPTER III
Prudence and Providence

The Greek romances were suffused with an awareness of the power of fate, an inscrutable force which relentlessly pursues certain individuals, inflicting on them disasters and tribulations far beyond the burden which most human beings are required to carry. Other people can sympathise: they themselves can do nothing, for as soon as they have escaped one misfortune, another catastrophe strikes. They may survive a shipwreck only to be captured by pirates, or be bought out of slavery only to find that their new master or mistress has designs on them. In all this, they are victims. Seeing no pattern or justice in the apparently arbitrary persecution, all they can do is suffer and lament, sometimes inveighing angrily against the gods:

Jusques où voulons-nous fuir cette maligne destinée qui nous poursuit par tout ? Cedons à la fortune, ne resistons plus à ce qui nous emporte. ... Que n'abrégeons-nous donc cette tragique poésie ?

Ha ! Dieux & Demons, ... en quelque lieu du monde que vous soyez, si mes complaints vous touchent, respondez-moy je vous prie, si Leucippe & moy avons commis un tel forfait qu'il faille qu'en si peu de temps nous soyons accablez de tant d'infortunes & de misères ?

je suis le trophée de la fortune, le spectacle des misères du monde, le jouet du Ciel & de la mer, & le theatre de toutes les Furies de l'Enfer. ... Ô Juppiter ! Ô souverain des Dieux ! Jusques à quand permettrez-vous que vostre Héraut ... soit réduit en une si miserable servitude ?

1. L'Histoire aethiopique de Heliodorus, transl. Amyot, fol.68.
Behind the sequence of events, however, there is a providence protecting the hero and heroine and ensuring that none of the disasters which befall them is fatal. The reader is made aware that some kind of pattern exists and that the conclusion is likely to be a happy one. Sometimes the characters themselves give a hint of insight: 'une seule journée ou deux souvenes fois aportent plusieurs expedients & moyens de salut, & donuent des accidents & aventures que les hommes avecq' tout leur conseil n'eussent jamais sceu excogiter.' More frequently, it is dreams which indicate how the future is to unfold, though the dreamer remains a victim and has no way of avoiding the danger of which he has been forewarned, using his knowledge merely to strengthen his fortitude. Oracles often establish the path of the hero's destiny. Heliodorus in particular builds up the reader's awareness of the providential framework as the Histoire éthiopique progresses, to the point where the suspense of the conclusion is weakened because of the constant references to the divine plan for Chariclea.

The French disciples of the Greek romance-writers clung very much to the same passivity in the face of fate. Their heroes and heroines undergo a long series of misfortunes against which their only consolation is their lamentations:

6 Dieux, s'escrioit-il ! A quel point de mal-heur vostre puissance nous a-t'elle reduits ? Avoir tant souffert de maux sur la mer ? Vivre sous la tyrannie des Pyrates & des brigands ? Estre privé de l'assistance des siens ? ... Cruelle Fortune ! veux-tu donc tousjours adjouster de nouvelles disgraces à nos miseres ?

Mal-heureuse Olympe ! où te conduit maintenant la fortune, après tant d'incertitudes & de revolutions ? N'est-ce pas assez d'avoir esté aportée par des mains incognues entre celles d'un Caloyer, puis estre ravie à quelque temps de là par des Coursaires, & finalement tombar au pouvoir d'un Bassa Mahometan, etc.

4. Histoire aethiopique, fol. 16.
The episode in the *Histoire éthiopique* in which Théagène is to be sacrificed exercised a particular appeal because of the element of suspense broken by the intervention of providence. Théogènes in *Du vray et parfaict amour* and Alexandre in *Histoire nègrepontique* are both condemned to death and miraculously saved; Anaxandre in the *Histoire indienne* has to be twice rescued by providence from public execution.

In the *Amadis* cycle and its successors, the framework of providence is there, represented by the fairies and magicians who protect the interests of the heroes. They can foretell the course of the lives of their heroes and quite frequently intervene supernaturally in events to ensure that that course is being followed. They cannot impose or prevent the working out of an ultimate destiny, however. Thus, in the *Götterdämmerung* scene which closes the *Romant des romans*, when the massive battle begins against the pagans, in which Amadis de Gaule, Don Bélianis de Grèce, le Chevalier du Soleil and many more are to be killed, Urgande, Alcandre and the other magicians have already created a Temple of Glory for the dead heroes and themselves and burnt their books, but they could have done nothing to influence the outcome of the battle.

As far as the ordinary encounters and trials of strength in the romances of chivalry are concerned, each knight behaves as though the outcome were dependent solely on his own efforts. He relies completely on his own courage and skill and would consider it unworthy to call for supernatural aid. When Rosidor hears about le *Château des Esprits*, for instance, his response is immediate and direct:

> ce courage sans peur, qui n'a point de plus chères delices que de se trouver parmy les dangers, eut à peine ouy la fin de son discours qu'il mouroit desja d'impatience d'esprouver ceste adven-ture. Il se leva incontinent & reprenant son cheval : A Dieu ne plaise, dit-il, qu'il me puisse estre reproché que j'aye abandonné mon chemin pour éviter le peril de quelque entreprise que ce soit, mon honneur y seroit trop offencé.8

Each adventure is related with little reference to the problems of fate because, as far as the hero is concerned, fate has nothing to do with the situation confronting him: it can be resolved by the application of his own forces.

In general, the concept of fate and fortune presented in the fiction of the period reflects the prevailing Christian concept of providence. Given that God loves man despite his faults, it was argued, we must accept that any incident which befalls us has been ordained for some purpose which we may very well not be able to grasp: in our ignorance, all we can do is submit in the faith that God's providence is working towards a necessary end:

Quand il t'arrive quelque fâcheux accident, il est déterminé de Dieu, il ne vient point à toy par inconstance fortuite des evenemens, qui ne savent où se placer. Il y a une telle coherence & une concatenation si nécessaire d'une cause à l'autre, qu'elles s'entremoussent toutes comme les flots, sans que nous puissions découvrir quel est le principe de leur impulsion.

While the ultimate outcome is in the providential hands of God, individual incidents may appear to be ordered by a capricious fortune, but this is only because man sees a sequence of events rather than the overall pattern.

It is this view of the forces acting on man which is embodied in the heroic novel. There is universal agreement with Bonnet, 'qu'il y a une providence qui preside sur les actions des hommes, pour donner le chastiement aux crimes & la recompense à la vertu', and the inevitable happy ending is itself an indication of this need to believe in providence. Characters in the novels sometimes reflect on the way in which their lives seem to suggest a plan. Lépante, for instance, having thrown himself off a cliff in despair and been saved by becoming caught in a fisherman's net, is

impressed by this manifestation of divine intervention:

qui peut douter ... du soin continuel
que les Dieux ont de nous ? car il est
impossible d'attribuer à la fortune,
qui est aveugle & imprudente, quelques
assistances que nous recevons aux plus
grands hazards de nostre vie, qui ne
peuvent estre données que par une
meilleure & plus sage main. 12

The existence of providence in the heroic novel is
made more evident by a comparison with the contemporary
tales of horror, from which it is noticeably absent. Those
of Camus are full of atrocities brought about by the corrupt
nature of man: the innocent suffer and injustice and
cruelty seem to flourish, though we are assured that divine
retribution will follow after death. L'Amphithéâtre sanglant
contains thirty-five stories offering a good deal of
gratuitous violence. A group of soldiers billeted on a
village mistreat the villagers. A captain rapes the daughter
of the house in which he is staying, is stabbed by her and
she in her turn is torn to pieces by the other soldiers.
Thereupon the villagers set upon the whole body of soldiers
and kill them with carefully described refinements of
cruelty. 13 Les Spectacles d'horreur (Paris, 1633) present a
further fifty such incidents, stressing the horrifying
cruelty of which human beings are capable, with no suggestion
of a benevolent force protecting the innocent.

The heroic novel, with its more optimistic view of the
human condition, assumes a benevolent circle of providential
protection, but within which events are, for all practical
purposes, ordered by fortune and require the individual to
work out his own response to them and carry it through. To
the hero, each situation demands a specific endeavour on
his part. He must exert himself as though there were no
such thing as a divine plan. The relationship between
providence and fortune is not usually referred to, therefore.

13. 'La Genereuse Vengeance', L'Amphitheatre sanglant (Paris,
1630), pp. 319-27.
As far as the reader is concerned, the hero's adventures involve his overcoming situations manufactured by fortune: it is only at the end of the work that the pattern of providence becomes apparent, and the triumph of virtue appears to be due to a combination of human enterprise and divine goodwill.

The key factor is action. The hero must treat any set of circumstances with which fortune has confronted him as an opportunity to demonstrate his heroic stature. He relies exclusively on his own courage and fortitude and scorns to consider the outcome of his encounters:

"Ceux qui se fient à leur courage ... n'invoquent point la puissance de la fortune."  

Action is an end in itself, not a means to some other end, and it is here that the heroic ethic moves into one of the major areas of debate in the first half of the seventeenth century, the area of prudence.

During Richelieu's period as minister, there was a move to put before the people an approach to politics which would take account of the realities of power in the kind of state then being constructed. The pretensions of an aristocracy which took it for granted that it had been entrusted with the well-being of the state but took advantage of its privileges to exploit the system in its own interests were attacked by Richelieu's group of propagandists and others who set out to expose the pride and self-seeking which lay behind the nobles' claims. In place of the ideal of générosité which the former ruling class held up, the new men preached political realism. According to Sirmond, Silhon, Hay du Chastelet, Balzac and Richelieu himself, political decisions must be taken, not in the light of lofty aspirations, but of a careful consideration of all the factors involved in the situation, and the results desired must be

weighed against the means necessary to achieve them. If the end dictates it, it is legitimate to have recourse to dissimulation and double standards, though these would not exist in an ideal world:

Il faut que la Prudence soulage la Justice de beaucoup de choses ; qu'elle coure où celle-ci, qui va trop lentement, n'arriverait jamais ; qu'elle empêche les maux dont la punition seroit ou impossible ou dangereuse. La Justice s'exerce seulement sur les actions des hommes ; mais la Prudence a droit sur leurs pensées & sur leur secret. Elle s'extend bien avant dans l'avenir ; elle regarde l'intérêt général ; elle pourvoit au bien de la Posterité ; et pour cet effet elle est contrainte ici & ailleurs d'employer des moyens que les Loix n'ordonnent pas, mais que la nécessité justifie, & qui ne seroient pas entièrement bons, s'ils n'estoient rapportez à une bonne fin.  

When all power emanates from the central authority of the state, the state must be allowed to decide what means are required to safeguard that power, and it is prudence which prescribes the spheres of efficacy of justice, conscience and political necessity. It emerges as the art of anticipating problems and adopting flexible, and if necessary, immoral methods to deal with them.  

This philosophy was strongly attacked by those who spoke for the aristocratic opponents of Richelieu's state. They denounced such prudence as simply another means of strengthening the power of a megalomaniac cardinal and rejected it as unworthy of anyone with noble ideals. Mathieu de Morgues, the chief spokesman for the exiled Queen Mother, dismissed it as "fourbe" or "finesse", totally distinct from true prudence: it destroyed the basis of trust on which the nobles depended for their relationships with their allies, servants, subjects and even their enemies. The manifesto of the Soissons rebellion of 1641 condemned Richelieu's prudence as imprudence for the same reason.  

15. Balzac, Œuvres, II, 62-3 ; cf. id., II, 174 : 'Il y a des Maximes qui ne sont pas justes de leur naturel, mais que leur usage justifie.'  
16. For a full account of the theory of political prudence, see Sutcliffe, Guez de Balzac et son temps, Chapter IV.  
The argument was concerned mainly with politics, the methods to be used by kings, ministers and counsellors in resolving matters of state, and did not really impinge on direct military action or the relationships between private individuals. There were some, however, who introduced the idea of flexible moral standards into the domain from which idealised heroism took its values, suggesting that destiny can be created and that the hero does not necessarily have to be born as such but can build himself up into one if he approaches the task in the right way.

Gracian's *El Heroe* found its way into French in 1645. It provides the ordinary man of good family with a textbook on the method of raising himself to the level of the greatest heroes. Though certain qualities are indispensable such as courage, there are many faults which can be hidden or even turned to advantage, provided the aspiring hero is careful not to reveal his whole self:

*L'habile homme doit empêcher qu'on ne luy sonde son fonds, s'il veut qu'on le respecte.*

*O homme dont la passion ne travaille que pour la renommée, toy qui aspires à la grandeur, que tout le monde te connoisse, mais que personne ne te comprenne! avec cette adresse, le mediocre paraîtra beaucoup, le beaucoup infini, & l'infinit davantage.*

He will cover his weaknesses by using his will-power, since uncontrolled passions are the surest means of betraying the real man:

*Donner à connoistre une passion, est la même chose qu'ouvrir un guichet à la forteresse de la capacité.*

Hence, the faculty which he should cultivate most is judgement. To establish his pre-eminence, he will look for a field of activity which has not been tackled before:

*C'est donc une dextérité non commune, d'inventer un nouveau sentier pour parvenir à l'excellence, découvrir une trace inconnue pour se rendre célèbre.*

18. Bibl. de l'Arsenal MS 5416, fol. 1921-34.
22. *Id.*, p. 9.
23. *Id.*, p. 49.
and when faced with several possibilities, he will select the one 'qui s'execute à la veuë de tout le monde, & avec la satisfaction d'un chacun, toujours avec fondement de la reputation.' Nor does this reputation automatically accompany 'l'eminence des belles qualitez' : it has to be worked for, the goodwill of the people has to be cultivated by 'artifice'. Throughout, heroism is shown not as something which derives from an inner necessity but as the result of ambition, careful manipulation of circumstances and, on occasion, dissimulation.

Cériziers, who suggests in the preface to Le Heros francois that 'Gratian croit faire le Heros, à peine fait-il son phantosme', nonetheless follows him at a number of points in his book:

Il n'est pas necessaire de produire tout le bien que l'on possede, beaucoup moins le mal que l'on souffre. C'est imprudence de discover son foible, discretion de le cacher ; qui le montre, s'expose ; qui le cache, se defend.26

L'hypocrisie qui deguise le mal merite de la louange, parce qu'elle veut faillir toute seule ; sa tromperie devient legitime, tandis qu'elle est utile.27

The detachment required for the exercise of "political" prudence is brought fully into the field of direct military action in an anonymous work, Le Guerrier prudent et politique, dedicated by the publishers, Sommaville and Courbé, to the Comte de Harcourt whom they praise as the living portrait of the prudent and politic warrior. The book provides advice on every aspect of warfare - raising troops, maps, sieges, spies, etc. - but the philosophy on which this advice is based is very different from that found in heroic literature. War is shown to be a hard-headed business which should not be mixed up with vague aspirations. Gloire and vertu are motivating factors which should be recognised and used in other people but which the prudent general should

24. id., p. 57.
25. id., Chapter 12.
27. id., p. 120.
not take as his own guiding principles. Loyalty and bravery, which can ultimately be reduced to self-interest, are also qualities which can be harnessed to achieve success. The real aim in war is 'de prevoir & de prevenir ce qui pourroit causer une issue contraire à nostre dessein.'

To do this, the general should ensure, as far as it is possible, that his venture will succeed by anticipating difficulties and by not estimating his own capabilities too highly:

son plus grand deffaut est de presumer trop de soy, & de se confier trop en la Fortune. ... La Fortune favorise, mais ne garantit pas des evenemens.

Though he is dealing with the field of activity which heroism claimed as its own, the author unashamedly preaches the political maxims of Naudé or Silhon:

Les desirs des Grands croissent toujours, toute leur Polytique tend à la gloire, & toute leur gloire à l'accroissement de leur puissance & à l'affermissement de leur domination. Ils ne croyent pas que leurs actions, qu'ils tiennent pour autant de Loix, soient sujettes à d'autres Loix ; & ne s'estiment pas infidèles en faussant leurs promesses, parce qu'ils ne croyent pas être obligéz de garder à la Couronne d'autruy la foy qu'ils ont jurée à la leur ; l'infidélité n'est pas une faute au Polytique, quand la foy luy est prejudiciable & luyoste quelque occasion d'asseurer ou d'accroistre son autorité.

Toute pensée utile à l'Estat est digne de l'esprit du Prince ; tout est bien, si tout va bien ; ses actions sont des loix pour ses sujets, & luy n'en reçoit point d'eux.

Si les loix ne trouvoient point de transgresseurs, si les preceptes estoient observez, & si les bons conseils estoient receus, ce seroit une erreur que de se departir de la loy, que de ne pas pratiquer les preceptes & de refuser les bons advis ; mais aujourd'huy, que qui fait mesme les loix les corrompt, qui enseigne trompe, & qui conseille ruine, le meilleur est de se deffier, de dissimuler & de ne croire pas trop tôt, de peur de s'en repentir trop tard.

30. Id., p. 51.
31. Id., p. 149.
32. Id., pp. 263-4.
Such concepts of prudence as those propounded by Gracian, Cériziers and the author of *Le Guerrier prudent et politique* which imply that it is possible to make oneself heroic are diametrically opposed to the essence of heroism as depicted in the novel. The hero *is*: if he is not born a hero, there is nothing he can do to become one (though on the other hand it is possible for a hero to derogate from his status). His destiny is to respond in a heroic way to anything that fortune may confront him with. There is no question of his having to weigh ends and means because for him there is only one end, not to become a hero but to continue to be one. Whether or not he is successful in his enterprises is irrelevant: what matters is the way he goes about them, constantly resisting the onslaughts of fortune by direct action.

Prudence involves anticipating fortune with the aim of avoiding its worst effects. Hence, anyone who makes use of prudence is automatically not heroic. Those who need to do so are trying to avoid action by rendering it unnecessary, a response which would never occur to the hero who prefers to lose a fight rather than refuse a challenge. When Chrisante counsels caution - 'se retirer devant un ennemy trop fort n'est pas une fuite honteuse, mais une prudente retraite : il ne faut pas confondre la temerité & la valeur' - Cyrus gives the instinctive reply of the true hero: 'Je ne scay pas encore trop bien ... faire toutes ces distinctions : c'est pourquoy de peur de me tromper en une chose où il va de mon honneur, je veux prendre le chemin le plus asseure, qui est celuy de combattre.' Zelmatide's courage makes him surmount every danger by proving that he scorns it. Tibère who, though valiant, thinks that any method of achieving success is valid, has to learn from Coriolan how unheroic artifice is.

33. cf. Nadal's point that for the Cornelian hero there is no separation between thought and action (*Le Sentiment de l'amour ..., pp. 133-4*).
Fortune is inconstant, no less so in its disfavour than in its favours. If it is not to dictate the terms of life as it had done in the Greek romances, it must be faced and tamed by vertu:

la vertu sçait agir avec la fortune, comme avec un ennemy qu'elle mesprise & dont elle sçait tourner tous les efforts & les stratagèmes à sa propre confusion.  

La Vertu doit estre une force & une puissance qui se rend maistresse de toutes choses.

La Fortune cede à quiconque la violante, & veut que le respect qu'on luy porte soit meslé d'audace.

dans les combats, plus on est valeureux, moins on court de fortune.

Prudence stems from fear and weakness, counselling flight from dangers which ought to be faced:

Il y en a qui attribuent la timidité à une prudence qui sçait reconnoistre la grandeur d'un peril & s'empesche de s'y hazarder : mais tant s'en faut, elle ne provient que de la foiblesse du jugement, qui ayant reconnu le peril, ne sçait pas ce qu'il faut faire pour le repousser ; & dans cette ignorance se trouble & fait que l'on abandonne & l'honneur & la vie mesma pour la crainte que l'on a de la perdre.

The heroic virtues such as courage, générosité and liberality are found in the young, but malice comes with age 'à force de converser parmy les hommes', together with 'la fausse prudence' which produces fear, cruelty and avarice.

The heroic Ménalippe cannot accept her mother's argument that 'la prudence veut que nous conservions ou changions nos inclinations selon qu'elles nous sont avantageuses ou qu'elles nous sont nuisibles' : such a view is contrary to all her natural impulses.

37. cf. Polexandre, III,705; Cléopâtre, IX,206-8; Ariane, p. 266.
38. Rosane, p. 56.
39. Id., p. 521.
40. Polexandre, I,106.
42. Ariane, p. 658.
43. Rosane, pp. 46-7.
44. Cléopâtre, VIII,290.
The man who claims to be prudent usually lacks openness and honesty: he has a 'vaine curiosité de conn-oistre l'advenir', whereas 'le sage remede aux choses presentes & laisse l'avenir à la conduite de la Providence.' Worrying about the future indicates a false scale of values, since instead of relying on oneself and on providence, one assumes that providence has to be forestalled or influenced, which is not only presumptuous but impossible:

que le destin est un puissant maistre, & que nostre prudence est vaine quand elle pense s'opposer à l'ordre immu-able de ses arrests. Le Ciel nous fait naistre pour suivre l'arrest de nos destinées, & la pru-dence dont nous pensons appuyer nos desseins flechit malgré nos intentions aux volontez de celuy qui peut à son gré disposer de toutes choses. la fortune se plaist à traverser nostre repos & se jolier de cette fausse pre-voyance, par laquelle nous voulons contrefaire les sages.

The only sense in which the heroic novel accepts prudence is in its mildest interpretation, as the opposite of impulsiveness. It may well be a good thing on occasion for a hero to learn to control his wilder excesses, but it must never lead him to compromise on the means he employs to reach his aims. He never stoops to dissimulation. If fortune presents two possible courses of action, it is legitimate to allow prudence to choose one of them, but not with any pretension to influencing providence. Such prudence does not enable the hero to win through, since that can only be achieved by action, but it helps him not to lose. In heroic terms, it is a half-virtue.

The distance between the attitude towards prudence adopted by the writers of heroic novels and the less idealistic view is well illustrated by a comparison of the

45. Polexandre, III, 15. 46. Antiope, I, 198. 47. L'Illustre Amalazonthe, p. 138. 48. Id., p. 144. 49. Polexandre, I, 781. 50. cf. Axiane, p. 466. 51. cf. Dubosc, Les Femmes heroïques, p. 127: 'vivre & descouvert sans dissimuler, c'est vivre heroïquement.' In novels, if a roundabout way of solving a problem has to be found, it is usually suggested to the hero by another character.
version of the Fiesco conspiracy included as an episode in *Ibrahim* with that given by Retz. In *Ibrahim*, Fiesco himself (the Comte de Lavagne) is depicted as a man totally devoted to the heroic life: 'l'ambition & le desir de la gloire estoient ses passions dominantes, & les seules choses pour lesquelles il faisoit toutes les autres.'

His view of heroism is firmly committed to the public good. It is his mother whose scheming results in his being converted to the idea of the conspiracy. She sends three pernicious counsellors to him with strict instructions on how to approach the subject: 'souvenez-vous sur toutes choses, dit-elle à Raphael Sacco, de ne luy rien conseiller de violent, que vous ne puissiez pretexter du bien public, de l'équité & de la gloire: car, poursuivit-elle, je connois le Comte; si vous ne luy proposez que sa conservation, son utilité, l'advancement de sa fortune & la perte de ses ennemis, vous ne le vaincrez jamais. Il faut picquer son esprit du desir de l'honneur & le tromper adroitement pour l'empescher de tromper nos esperances.'

Because the plot is presented to him in terms of virtue and heroic altruism, he accepts the leadership but steadfastly refuses to countenance anything that might be construed as deceit.

In Retz's version of the same conspiracy, though Fiesco is justified against the suggestion that he was naturally of 'un esprit couvert & dissimulé', the author nonetheless approves of his use of political prudence: 'je ne pense pas que l'on puisse blâmer avec justice la dissimulation du Comte, parce que dans les affaires où il s'agit de nostre vie & de l'intrest general de l'Estat, la franchise n'est pas une vertu de saison; la nature nous faisant voir dans l'instinct des moindres animaux qu'en ces extremitez l'usage des finesse est permis pour se defendre de la violence qui nous veut opprimer.' Calcagno is shown trying to dissuade an eager Fiesco from joining the plot.

---

52. *Ibrahim*, III, 666.
53. *Id.*, III, 677–8.
To Retz, *gloire* is an end in the pursuit of which it is legitimate to employ means which could not strictly be considered *généreux*. In the heroic world, the means must be *généreux*, otherwise the enterprise, whatever its conclusion, is damned from the start. *Gloire* is gained as much from the striving as from the achievement.55

Though there is no evidence that writers of heroic novels were consciously taking up a position in opposition to the philosophy of Richelieu's state - indeed, some of them were admirers and supporters of his - the concept of man embodied in the heroic novel with its commitment to individual liberty nonetheless represented a definite response to the question of the morality of power being widely debated at the time. The novel associates itself firmly with a morality which allows no place to flexible moral standards and proclaims those virtues which the *noblese d'épée* had always claimed as theirs, though, as Richelieu's supporters pointed out56, the aristocratic ideals were a well-worn myth. Readers of heroic novels accepted the myth, however, preferring to see the problem of power and authority raised onto an idealised plane - simple escapism perhaps, or a need to believe that society was ordered by a special category of human beings who worked in conjunction with the forces of providence, rather than by competing factions who varied the norms of morality.

55. cf. Pintard, 'La Conjonuration de Fiesque ou l'Hérosisation d'un factieux', Héroïsme et création littéraire ..., pp. 225-30. The views of apolitical moralists on prudence occupy a variety of intermediate positions between the heroic and the political. Senault approaches the heroic in his insistence that prudence must not concern itself unduly with the future (De l'usage des passions, 8th edn., Lyon, 1657, pp. 314 et seq.); La Mothe le Vayer (Œuvres, I, chap. XIII), Gériziers (Le Philosophe françois, III, 129 et seq.) and Bardin (Le Lycée, I, 348) reveal a concern for mediocrity and moderation which has nothing to offer the heroic ideal.

56. See Sutcliffe, Guez de Balzac, p. 164 et seq.
for their own ends. The literary hero was appreciated by a large number of readers as an answer to the problem of the two great unknown factors in life, 'la liberté de l'homme et le caractère imprévisible de l'avenir.'

CHAPTER IV
The Passions

The neo-stoicism which exercised a considerable influence on French thought at the beginning of the seventeenth century taught that man's reason was supreme. The greatest aim of the wise man must be self-knowledge and, since the passions distorted his perception of the world and of himself, they were opposed to the reason and could only impede his search for enlightenment. It was therefore the function of the will to extirpate the passions, those maladies of the soul, and raise the wise man to a plane of ataraxia from which he could contemplate with detachment the world and its weaknesses. The will was the key to a correct ordering of the human faculties and the attainment of the self-mastery which was the aim of virtue. The hero in stoic terms was thus the man whose will rigidly excluded all passions such as ambition, gloire, love or jealousy and who practised virtue without necessarily having any sense of involvement with his fellow men.

A number of writers of heroic novels were known for their stoic leanings. Gomberville produced in 1646 La Doctrine des moeurs in which he expounded a strict stoic philosophy and showed a sage who achieves a 'divine immobilité, s'attache tout entier à la consideration de soy-même, pese serieusement les mouvemens de son ame.' Desmarets de Saint-Sorlin published his Morales d'Epictète in 1653. Chevreau's L'Escole du sage has strong stoic elements despite the author's careful inclusion of disparaging references to the impracticability of the stoic ideal and his advocacy

1. La Doctrine des moeurs, Tab. 71.
of Christian precepts. The same dual attitude is evident in his Tableau de la fortune. 2

It is natural that some measure of these sympathies should find its way into the novels they produced, but it tends to be in the form of moral maxims offered by tutors and hermits and does not affect the action of the novel to any great extent. The hero of Cythérée is constantly being plied with philosophical advice by wise old men. Rosane contains an important figure called Uranie who has succeeded in rising above the tyranny of the passions. The supposed authoress of Orazie is lauded because, when she is obliged to describe a passion, 'elle ne la flatte point, elle n'en farde jamais la deformité avec de belles paroles : mais elle en parle comme d'une maladie de l'ame' 3, and the moral tone of the work frequently betrays a leaning towards stoicism.

It is certainly possible to interpret some of the heroic concepts in terms of the stoic ideal. The view of the hero as a kind of moral island, separate from the rest of mankind and untouched by the weaknesses which assail them, parallels that of the stoic sage. For some writers, heroic vertu, like its stoic equivalent, is not exercised for the benefit of others but as an end in itself, to be contemplated in solitude. 4 On the whole, however, the fundamentals of heroism cannot be reconciled with the tenets of stoicism because all the stoic sage's striving is towards withdrawal from the world, inner contemplation and passivity in the face of fortune. The hero's reactions, on the other hand, are towards self-assertion and above all action to resist

2. When Chevreau published a revised edition of L'Escole du sage (L'Escole du sage ou le Caractere des vertus et des vices, Lyon, 1664), he added a second part in which the sympathies for stoicism discernible in the original edition are considerably diluted. Le Tableau de la fortune contains a thinly veiled admiration for the stoic attitude to death (Book II, Chap. 7).

3. Orazie, 4 vols. (Paris, 1646), Preface. This novel was published by Mézeray who declares that the manuscript was given to him by a nobleman with the information that the author was a high-born lady. Mézeray expresses his surprise that a lady could write a work so accomplished. The lady has been taken to be Madame de Senecterre.

the challenges offered by fate. He is dependent on the rest of the world as a theatre in which to display his superiority. Battles are not to be watched as a detached observer as the stoics would urge, but to be used as an opportunity for moral self-aggrandisement. Suicide, the supreme stoic affirmation of independence, is the negation of heroism. Death has to be assimilated into the hero's outward-looking ethic:

elle est plus belle quand on la trouve par le danger, que quand on la trouve par le desespoir, & ceux qui s'en éloignent avec raison ont toujours plus de gloire que ceux qui s'en approchent avec joye.5

On the occasions when heroes turn their swords against themselves, it is an impulsive reaction to a sudden emotional shock, almost invariably rejection by a mistress, and not a rational response to disaster or danger. When they have had time to consider the situation, their natural urge to survive and resist reasserts itself.

The heroic ethos had much more in common with the catholic humanist outlook which largely superseded the neo-stoic morality. According to this view, the stoic ideal of suppression of the passions was misconceived because it did nothing to help struggling man come to terms with his divided nature. It ignored the fact that the will, provided it was exercising its proper sovereignty, could draw on the potential of the passions and employ them in the cause of virtue. The passions were rehabilitated. They are, it was argued, morally neutral and can only be classed as good or bad by reference to the end to which they are applied. Thus, circumstances have to be taken into account in assessing the morality of a passion. If the will is functioning properly, it can moderate the passions and allow the energy involved in them to be directed towards the cause of virtue.

5. Scanderberg, I,111 ; cf. Mégacle's rejection of the stoic admiration for Antony, Cato and Brutus : 's'ils eussent marché la teste levée contre leur mauvais destin & se fussent presentez jusqu'à la fin à tout ce que le Ciel irrité leur pouvait proposer, ils eussent laissé à la posterité une reputation plus entiere, & eussent passé pour fermes, pour intrepides & pour inesbranlables dans la bonne & dans la mauvaise fortune' (Cléopâtre, VIII,103). cf. also Ariane, pp. 563-4.
Such a theory is propounded by a number of moralists, all of whom reject the stoic attitude to the passions as false. Coeffeteau accuses the stoics of ignoring the complexity of human nature and trying to turn man into either a rock or a god. Senault denounces their beliefs repeatedly in stronger terms, claiming that they are capable of appealing only to those arrogant enough to want to rise above the human condition and become angels. Cériziers sees stoicism not simply as an impracticable philosophy, but as a positively subversive force within the religious life of the community.

Professor Levi has shown that one of the effects of the reaction against neo-stoic ethics was the rehabilitation of gloire as the supreme moral value. From having a pejorative sense in Justus Lipsius and du Vair, the word 'gloire' had evolved by the 1630s to the point where it was considered the highest personal quality and had been assimilated to the ethic of energy and activity which was replacing the passive emphasis of stoicism. As the force of stoicism declined, so too did the distinction made by the stoics between reason and passion, and the passions could even be seen as an ingredient in heroic virtue transcending the norms of reason.

Some of the proponents of this theory gave added encouragement to the heroic ethic by arguing that special value inhered in those passions associated with action which were held to reside in the irascible appetite. Coeffeteau claims that the irascible side of man's nature has more générosité than the concupiscible because it was ordained by nature for the latter's defence. Thus,

la Force ou la Valeur qui reside en l'Irascible est une vertu plus digne & plus louable que la temperance qui reside en la Concupiscible. Aussi experimentons-nous que ce nous est chose

7. De l'usage des passions, 8th edn. (Lyon, 1657), pp. 121 et seq. and passim.
bien plus honteuse de ne refrener pas
les mouvemens de la Concupiscible que
de n'arrester pas ceux de l'Irascible :
d'autant que ceux-cy offensent moins
la raison que ceux-là.10

Senault shows how all the passions can be turned towards
positive action by a proper use of the reason, with the
implication that the hero is the product of his own will-
power:

La raison est le propre bien de l'homme, ... .
Puisque ce bien est le plus grand de tous
les autres, il faut le respendre dans
toutes les parties de l'homme & en rendre
capables les plus basses facultez de nostre
ame. Il n'y a point de crainte qui ne serve
d'nostre assurance si elle est bien mesnagée,
il n'y a point d'esperance qui estant bien
reglée ne nous anime aux actions generouses
& difficiles, il n'y a point d'hardiesse
qui estant bien conduitte ne rende les
soldats invincibles. 11

The idea that any passion could work positively towards
virtue provided it was controlled by the reason was taken
over by the novel and used to justify the actions of warrior
lovers in the grip of strong emotions. The heroes depicted
by novelists were by nature spontaneous creatures, liable
to react impulsively when their passions were aroused, and
there could be no suggestion that they were the victims of
disordered faculties. They were not statues cast in the
stoic mould; their hearts were 'ny de pierre, ny de bronze,'
as La Calprenède is fond of putting it. Since their aims
were dictated by reason, the purity of their passions was
guaranteed and the experiencing of violent emotions was in
fact an indication of the sensitivity of their souls.

Coriolan's reply to his confident who has urged him to apply
his philosophy in the face of his misfortunes is that philo-
sophy and courage might help with ordinary troubles, 'mais

---

10. op.cit., p. 26. Levi points out (op.cit., p. 145) that
Coeffeteau's attribution of the primacy to the irascible
over the concupiscible reverses the doctrine of Saint Thomas
and describes it as 'the most considerable concession to the
ethics of glory which we have so far met.'
11. op.cit., p. 6; cf. id., pp. 131, 143-4.
ils ne peuvent m'oster le sentiment pour un mal de la
nature du mien sans oster à mon ame cette faculté sensitive
de laquelle elle est composée en partie.\textsuperscript{12}

The Thomist classification of the passions into the
irascible and concupiscible appetites, five in the former
and six in the latter\textsuperscript{13}, was unimportant to the novel and
was largely ignored. Only those passions were of interest
which aim at good and which arise from a forceful character.

\textit{Fuite} and \textit{désespoir}, for instance, are disregarded and some
of the secondary or mixed passions become correspondingly
more important (\textit{miséricorde}, \textit{émulation}, etc.). Desmarests
goes so far as to suggest that there are only certain
passions (he mentions love, hatred, desire and fear) which
reside in us: ambition, pride, avarice, anger, envy and the
other 'mauvaises passions' are not naturally found in man
but are produced when the judgement is perverted.\textsuperscript{14}

In fact, the novelists' interest centres on two
passions which are accorded the dominant position, namely,
love and ambition. They are felt to fulfil a special function
in that they stimulate the individual to aspire as high as
possible, ambition in terms of self-fulfilment and love in
service towards his fellow beings (though it almost always
manifests itself as service for one particular being of the
opposite sex). The hero is expected to be susceptible to
both, especially love, for 'la Nature ... crie qu'il faut
aimer, & ... en inspire la passion en même temps qu'elle
inspire la vie.'\textsuperscript{15}

In concentrating on these two passions, the novel was
taking up a point made by a number of moralists who argued
that love and ambition interacted and complemented one
another to form a vital force which could inspire man to
reach out for the higher virtues. 'Il semble que tout ce
que l'Amour a de force, il l'emprunte de l'ambition. C'est

\textsuperscript{12} \textit{Cléopâtre}, I,275.
\textsuperscript{13} See Levi, \textit{op.cit.}, pp. 19-21.
\textsuperscript{14} Rosane, p. 527; cf. \textit{Cléopâtre}, VI,158-9.
\textsuperscript{15} Polexandre, IV,19.
elle qui luy allume son flambeau ; c'est elle qui le rend sensible, c'est elle qui l'anime aux plus grands desseins & aux plus generreuses entreprises. ... Il semble que ces deux passions aient besoin l'une de l'autre pour s'entretenir ; l'Amour adoucit l'ambition, & l'ambition anime l'amour. 16 The characteristic features of love as experienced by heroes derive from ambition : 'c'est l'ambition qui rend l'amour sensible, jaloux, agissant, & courageux.' 17 Temperamentally, the man who is capable of one will also be drawn to the other :

Les âmes propres à l'amour demandent une vie d'action qui éclate en événements nouveaux. Comme le dedans est mouvement, il faut aussi que le dehors le soit et cette manière de vivre est un merveilleux acheminement à la passion. 18

N'est-ce point que le même temperament se trouve & dans celui qui fait la guerre, & dans celui qui fait l'amour ? Le sang domine dans l'un & l'autre. 19

It is this sort of individual that the heroic novel set out to portray - active, enterprising, sensitive to the influence of the opposite sex. His susceptibility to passion is a part of his claim to heroic status. Scudéry identifies love and ambition as the noblest of the passions. 20 Love is 'la plus noble cause de toutes les actions heroïques' 21 ; it turns mere bravery into heroism. 22 It can make old men perform 'des actions plus heroïques que celles qu'ils ont exercées en la plenitude de leur vigueur.' 23 Ambition and love (represented as 'pleasure') are 'les plus puissans genies du monde.' 24

In Polexandre, the function of ambition and love in the great pattern of providence, bringing the heroic individual the closest of all humans to God's purposes, is

17. id., II,259.
22. id., V,209.
23. La Cythérée, II,329.
explained by a hermit. The perfect harmony of the universe is dependent on the most discordant elements counter-balancing one another. Ambitious men have their part to play in this scheme: 'leurs desseins qui n'ont jamais de fin sont comme autant de machines dont la Providence se sert pour faire mouvoir le pesant corps du monde, & empescher par des secousses & des agitations frequentes, qu'il ne tombe dans une mortelle letargie.'

In heaven, all is tranquil, on earth all is movement, and God has made us active, impatient and ambitious so that we can work towards felicity:

Que ne produit point cette fièvre de l'âme, insolente, dangereuse & teméraire que nous nommons valeur ? A quelles extremitez ne nous engage point, avec plaisir, cette autre qui s'appelle Amour ?

The interaction of love and energetic striving, whether it be called ambition or gloire or valour, is the process required to raise man above his normal limitations and set him on the path towards perfection:

Si vous me demandez qui a poussé les premiers hommes à se rendre les deffenseurs des foibles, & les extirpateurs des monstres & des tyrans, je vous répondray que c'est l'Amour. L'Amour eschauffe l'ame encore plus que le sang, la remplit du desir de la Gloire ; & luy arrachant tout ce qu'elle a contracté de bas & de terrestre par la contagion du corps, la purifie & la porte dans cette suprême perfection à laquelle elle est destinee.

It is significant that most writers of heroic novels chose to call this passion ambition rather than gloire when referring to it as a morally neutral passion to be found in anyone with determination. If it is divorced from the reason and allowed to take control of the faculties, it devours all moral sense and forces the individual to

26. Id., V,944.
27. Id., V,945-6.
28. cf. above, pp. 60-61.
perform ignoble acts. It blinds him and puts him in the unheroic position of caring more about the end than about the means. So it is that Dicéarque, the persecutor of Mérinte and Ariane, confesses on his deathbed that 'l'ambition a esté la passion forcenée qui m'a toujours agité, à laquelle celle d'amour se meslant encore, ces deux furies ensemble m'ont tourmenté si cruellement que je n'ay point esté maistre de mes actions & me suis laissé conduire à elles sans appeler en aucune façon la raison à mon secours.' If his reason had been sufficiently strong to enable him to direct these two passions, he could have been an honourable man, possibly even heroic. Ambition would then have been transmuted into gloire since its aims would have been virtuous, and the love he felt would have been devoted to service rather than self-interest.

The rehabilitation of the passions as the source of energy necessary for heroic actions was therefore dependent on the supremacy of the will. Many of the earlier heroic novels stress the need for rational control and illustrate the disastrous consequences when the passions become stronger than the will. In Cythérée, the reader is informed 'tant que la raison & la bien-seance sont assez fortes pour s'opposer à l'impetuosité de la passion, ... elle (i.e. love) apporte de grands avantages à la personne qu'elle possède' and the dire effects of an epidemic of irrational love which strikes all the women of Cyprus are described. Guérin de Bouscal distinguishes between the love felt by 'les grandes ames' whose passions are subject to rational principles and that of 'les hommes communs' who allow themselves the licence which leads to infidelity and dissimulation. The hero of Polexandre at all times subjects his love to his will.

The supremacy of the will was, however, already being

questioned in certain quarters and a more determinist explanation of man's behaviour was beginning to be felt. Already in 1624, the Jesuit Caussin had made out a case for environmental determinism, describing the way of life of a child born in poverty, unable ever to escape from its yoke regardless of the talents and determination he has been endowed with by nature. Religious attitudes were changing from the optimism of earlier years: 'déjà le Dieu naturellement aimable de François de Sales se transformait en le Dieu redoutable et arbitraire de Saint-Cyran.'33 A treatise on heroic education postulates a predetermined propensity to virtue or vice, with temperament and experience dictating the general direction to be followed. The soul is 'un hosti nud (sic), qui vient habiter dans un Palais meublé, où il trouve les dispositions et les semences, les habitudes que le temps et l'exercice meurissent par après. Nous portons dans nos veines le germe de nos bonnes & mauvaises qualités et la masse du corps, insensible d'elle-mesme, contient neantmoins le principe des sentimens que l'esprit vivifie.'

The traditional explanation of the operation of love had almost always postulated a rational basis along neoplatonic lines. The eye is struck by beauty, but since this is only a symbol of the spiritual beauty beyond, the beholder's reason carries his mind from the beautiful to the good, that is, the virtue embodied in the beloved. If reason is functioning properly and not allowing itself to be clouded by the senses, it will dwell only on the spiritual qualities of the object it loves. There can therefore be no question of possession or demands to be made or met, but simply satisfaction to be gained from the contem-

32. La Cour sainte, pp. 97-98.
34. L'Éducation herique. Recueillie d'un manuscrit et mise en lumière par J. Ottonis, Chanoine de la cathedrale de Gand, Bibl. Méjanes MS 477, fol. 1. I have not been able to find a printed copy of this work, though Chapelain's library contained a copy, published in Brussels in 1655 (see Searles, Catalogue de tous les livres de feu M. Chapela-
plation of goodness, the honouring and adoring of an ideal which can be cherished equally well in its absence as in its presence. Jealousy is inadmissible because it presupposes some kind of right to possession. Love can therefore only exist in a context of virtue, subject to the rational control of the lover: any emotion which leads to behaviour contrary to the prescriptions of virtue is by definition not love. The will must remain paramount: as a good lover, Scanderberg rejects the arguments of those who try to devalue it:

D'une puissance souveraine, qui est la volonté, ils en font une malheureuse esclave, ils ne sçauroient souffrir qu'elle suive le bien qui l'attire, ils croyent qu'elle est emportée par la violence & veulent qu'une force étrangère fasse tous ses mouvemens, comme si pour estre aveugle elle ne pouvoit pas estre libre.35

As the power of the will came more into question, such a view with its simple categories and its rejection of the more complex aspects of emotion was to be superseded by an awareness of the involuntary features of love, inexplicable elements which render the will powerless and force love upon the unsuspecting individual. The attraction exercised by one person upon another could not be explained in terms of absolute truth or goodness, nor was it possible to reject passions such as jealousy as being outside the confines of love. This was obviously an area of human behaviour which did not lend itself to simple analyses. What had been seen as straightforward moral responses were now revealed as rationalisations of wishes. To the comtesse de Fiesque, who had remarked that she did not love Gramont, 'le plus grand fripon du monde', Rouville replied: 'Voilà une plaisante raison, madame, que vous m'allégez pour votre justification! Je sais que vous êtes encore plus friponne que lui, et je ne laisse pas de vous aimer.'36

35. Scanderberg, I, 189–90.
There had never been in the seventeenth-century novel a complete commitment to a neo-platonic concept of love, even in L'Astrée. Novelists were concerned to offer their readers situations based on emotions not too far removed from those they might themselves have experienced rather than illustrations of abstract theories. Consequently, even in those novels in which the only true love is presented as rational and controlled, there is an indication that love has its unexplored and incomprehensible areas. Ibrahim declares that 'il y a une puissance superieure, qui nous pousse malgré nous & sans l'aide de nostre connoissance, à aymer souvent une personne que la raison commune nous defendroit de regarder.' An argument about how real love should manifest itself, in which Hipolite claims 'L'amour doit estre plus fort que la raison : il ne la detruit pas, mais il la trouble. ... la colere & la jalousie sont les veritables marques d'amour : ... la jalousie est la seule marque indubitable de cette passion', is allowed to remain unresolved.

It was not long before such indefinable aspects of love were occupying a much more prominent place in the emotions of the major characters in novels. L'amour d'inclination, a dangerous aberration according to the moralists of the time, became a force to be reckoned with and effectively eclipsed L'amour d'élection as the motivating factor behind the deeds of heroes. Whereas in Ariane and Polexandre the characters who fall victim to this sort of irrational passion are shown to be morally corrupt and inspire horror in the right-thinking characters and in the reader, there is an increasing number of novelists who recognise that the human condition cannot be explained simply in terms of how man would like to be and that the contradictions within human emotions are masked rather than resolved by an

---

37. See M. Magendie, La Politesse mondaine et les théories de l'honnêteté en France au XVIIe siècle de 1600 à 1660, 2 vols. (Paris, 1925), I,195 et seq.; Coulet, op.cit., I,150-2. For discussions in novels on the nature of love, see Scanderberg, I,189 et seq.; Antiope, II,73 et seq., Cassandre, VI,972 et seq.
38. Ibrahim, I,155.
40. e.g. Marcellin and Dicéarque in Ariane, Tisiphone and Syziphe in Polexandre. The virtuous pair, Histrérie and Mélicerte, who both fall in love with Iphidamante, work their way from an
insistence on the supremacy of the will. Characters are created who are admirable for the most part but whose actions become questionable when loves takes control. An honourable man may lose all moral sense when he falls in love: 'cette violente passion qui le maistrise le transporte tellement qu'il se resout avec facilité aux choses les plus injustes & les plus des-honnestes, si elles lui font esperer la jouyssance de ce qu'il aym.' Pacore abandons the woman he loves for another, pleading in his justification: 'j'en fus si mortallement attaint, je l'advouë, que je mourus dés le moment en moy pour ne vivre qu'en elle & pour elle. Il se fit donc un tel changement en moy-mesme, que j'avois de la peine à me reconnoistre.' Araspe, charged with the care of Panthée, has the best of intentions but is unable to prevent himself from persecuting her with the 'insolence de sa passion.' Entirely virtuous ladies feel no shame in explaining their feelings in terms of 'ce je ne scay quoy qui nous fait mepriser les services de tous les autres & qui par des causes qui nous sont inconnuës & qui ne peuvent s'exprimer, nous fait trouver dans luy seul tout ce qu'il y a d'aymable & d'accomply.'

Two of the major heroic novels, Cléopâtre and Le Grand Cyrus, are based on the assumption that love is a product of involuntary inclination rather than recognition of merit and election, and the novels of the 1650s follow their lead entirely. A scene such as the one in Polexandre where Zelmatide surmounts his natural desires '& se destacha si bien de l'homme & de la matiere, que son amour devint tout intellectuel' would have been considered unrealistic if

irrational love of inclination to a rational love based on recognition (Polexandre, III,89).

41. L'Illustre Amalazonthe, p. 493.
42. Alcide, II.
43. Axiane, p. 278.
44. Berenice, II,571.
45. See below, Chapters XI and XII.
46. Polexandre, IV,459 ; cf. Araxez (La Cythérée, IV,3-4) : 'par la force du raisonnement, il surmonta la foiblesse de l'Amour & du desespoir.'
it had been offered to the public in a novel published during the 1650s.

It was perhaps natural that a recognition of the autonomy of the passions should lead to attempts to justify them. Since the will could not control the emotions produced by the heart, no blame could attach to those who found themselves borne helplessly along. Such an attitude appears in Le Grand Cyrus in the argument put forward by Stésilée:

je ne voy pas que la vertu consiste à n'avoir point de passions : la Nature les donne à tous les hommes : on ne s'en sçauroit deffaire qu'avecque la vie : & je suis fortement persuadée que pourvuo que ces passions ne nous facent rien faire contre la veritable gloire, nous ne sommes point coupables de ne les pouvoir surmonter dans nostre coeur. 47

It is developed in Clélie into a full discussion about the validity of the passions. Though they have been the cause of all the greatest crimes the world has seen, that is not a reason for condemning them, as though one would stop loving roses because they have thorns. The passions are the source of all pleasures and the instigators of all the heroic actions ever performed. 48 If there were no passions, civilisation would not exist since they are the basis of all the aspirations and activities which have ensured man's progress. 'Ne nous pleignons donc point des passions, puis qu'elles font seules toutes les occupations, & tous les plaisirs de tous les hommes.' 49 If it is hard to overcome them, that is a clear indication that opposition is the wrong attitude to adopt: 'abandonnez vous à elles ; & au lieu de vous amuser à les vouloir vaincre, cherchez plus-tost à les satisfaire, & vous n'en serez pas si tourmenté.' 50

47. Le Grand Cyrus, VII, 753.
49. Id., II, 1052.
50. Id., II, 1053.
Condemnation of them is misguided: 'elles donnent des plaisirs infinis à ceux qui cherchent à les satisfaire: & elles ne font presques jamais de mal, qu'à ceux qui les veulent détruire.'

The tone of the discussion is light-hearted and it is the playful Amilcar who expresses the most complete faith in the passions. No-one takes up the implication behind Stésilée's proviso: what is the moral position of someone who is obliged by his passions to act against the demands of gloire or of society? In fact, much of Clélie is taken up with explanations of how the dangers inherent in the passions can be avoided if relationships are established on a correct basis. The ideal of amitié tendre expounded in Le Grand Cyrus is modified and extended. Love needs to be tempered with amitié if the lover is not to be tormented by his passion, explains Herminius. The ideal relationship begins with amitié, a response to virtue, modesty and decorum in a woman; gradually it turns to love but the element of amitié remains:

l'amour & l'amitié se meslent comme deux Fleuves, dont le plus celebre fait perdre le nom à l'autre. Mais apres tout, les eaux du plus petit y sont effectivement aussi bien que celles du plus grand.

Amitié ensures that the power of passion is not allowed to control the relationship completely:

il n'y a rien de si doux que cette espece d'amour. Car toute violente qu'elle est, elle est pourtant toujous un peu plus reglée que l'amour ordinaire, elle est plus durable, plus tendre, plus respe-tueuse & mesme plus ardente, quoy qu'elle ne soit pas sujette à tant de caprices tumultueux que l'amour qui naist sans amitié.

51. id., II,1054.
52. See below, Chapter XII.
53. Clélie, V,332.
54. id., V,331.
Some of the admirable characters in Clélie have succeeded in avoiding all the dangers inherent in the passions by holding to an ideal of repos. Térame maintains emotional equilibrium: 'regardant l'ambition comme une passion pleine d'inquiétude, il luy a deffendu l'entrée de son coeur. Il n'y a mesme jamais laissé entrer l'amour avec tous les suplices qui le suivent dans le coeur des autres Amans.'

Théandre, a heroic figure, 'met le souverain bien au repos. Aussi pour ne s'exposer jamais à le perdre, a-t'il osté à l'amour tout ce qu'il a de fâcheux & de penible. Il aime les beaux objets en general, sans qu'il y en ait aucun en particulier qui puisse avoir la force de l'attaquer jusques à le rendre malheureux ; de sorte que l'amour est plustost un simple plaisir dans son coeur qu'une passion.'

How they are able to resist the passions if the passions are not subject to the will is not explained. Madeleine de Scudéry acknowledged that the passions were a source of vital energy ultimately outside the control of the individual and welcomed what they had to offer in the way of pleasure but she preferred to believe that the darker side of the passions need not impinge on ordinary people if they followed a sufficiently strict set of emotional rules. The 'Carte de Tendre' with its indications of the correct paths to be followed in love is an attempt to keep the lover well away from the dangerous sea and the unknown territories of real passion. It solves the problem by ignoring it.

The heroic novel never ventured into the more complicated areas of emotional analysis: that was left to the nouvelle and the novels of Madame de Lafayette. Nonetheless, the realisation that love and the other passions lay outside the control of the will had a considerable effect on the concept of heroism, since it directly concerned the moral autonomy of the hero. Both forms of the heroic ideal, that

55. id., VI, 1354.
56. Id., IX, 351-2.
which saw the hero as an exceptional individual responsible only to himself and the one which stressed his obligations to the rest of mankind, were originally based on the premise that there were certain moral norms to which the hero had to remain constant. His obligations — either to the maintenance of his image or to the ethic of service to mankind, depending on the outlook of the author — had to be fulfilled at any cost. Falling in love would not diminish such obligations: any emotional relationship had to be subordinated to the values which made the hero what he was. Ibrahim could not break his word to the Sultan merely to stay with Isabelle; Oroondate could not cease pursuing his gloire simply because Statira had required him to do so. If, however, the hero was liable to fall victim to an emotion over which he had no control and which could influence every aspect of his behaviour, he could no longer claim to be in command of his destiny. The one factor above all others which had entitled him to be considered heroic, namely his ability to impose his will on every situation and on himself, was to become meaningless if his actions were to be dependent on an arbitrary movement of the humours, a je ne sais quoi. Moral independence was to become a pretence.

The loss of the belief in the supremacy of the will was one of the major factors in the eventual decline of the heroic novel. Writers who depicted their characters at the mercy of passions stronger than their will contributed, perhaps without realising it, to the decline of the concept of heroism. Once La Rochefoucauld had provided some insights into the nature of the passions and Racine had illustrated their destructive potential, the hero-figure in the tradition of Oroondate could no longer exist in literature. The decline was accelerated by the strong movement towards

58. See below, Chapter XIII.
feminism which reached its peak in the 1650s: the values of heroism had been largely male but the new feminism led to a conflict between male and female values. It is this conflict which will be considered in Chapter V.
Though the romanesque hero was always expected to be susceptible to love and usually devoted much of his energy to fighting on behalf of the woman he served, his relationship with her was subsumed by his heroic status. It is not that love was subordinate to gloire but rather, as Rodrigue and Chimène both understood, that love had no real meaning except in a context of heroic affirmation. Love could only be expressed in terms of action: if the hero withdrew from action in order to pursue his love separately, he would have done so in opposition to all his natural impulses and would be unable to continue for long. Like Achilles among the daughters of Lycomedes, Croondate abandons Statira because 'il eut dépit de la vie qu'il menoit tandis que tout le monde estoit en armes.' There is no conflict between love and heroic values, simply a recognised scale of priorities. Justinian considers for a moment the possibility of breaking his word to the Sultan for the sake of remaining with Isabelle, but very quickly tells himself that such an action would be self-defeating:

\[\text{tu crois que cette gene}r\text{euse Princesse que tu sers te trouveroit digne de son affection apres cette lascheté ?}\]

His view is confirmed by Isabelle:

\[\text{scâchez que je suis assez gene}r\text{euse pour ne pouvoir souffrir que vous me tesmoigniez vostre amour par une lascheté : & je suis ravie de voir que vous aymiez la gloire autant que moy.}\]

1. Cassandre, II, 86.  
2. Ibrahim, II, 470, 489.
This kind of heroic love-relationship derives from the inequality in strength between the sexes. The weaker sex has to accept the dominance of the male because his strength provides her with protection. Hence, the only way in which a woman can avoid the secondary rôle demanded of her by love for a hero is by literally taking over the primary rôle in heroism; in other words, by taking up the sword and equalling man on his own terms. Sémiramis, Hérole, Meyrem, Polinixe and many others scornfully reject the passivity which characterises the traditional function of woman and demonstrate that they have as much courage and martial spirit as any man.

The Amazon, the woman who has refused from the start to submit to the physical superiority of man and relies on her own strength to establish her position in the world, is a perennial figure in the heroic novel. It is a poor story which does not contain at least one heroic female who dons armour and faces men on equal terms, declaring 'quoy que je sois femme, mon métier est de combattre les hommes.' Those set in the world of ancient Greece or Persia were almost bound to include an episode or two involving the Amazon tribes of Scythia. Opinions varied as to whether these tribes contained any males. According to some, the Amazons lived cut off from men. In Cassandre, their queen, Talestris, eventually persuades them of the error of their ancestors 'qui ayant cru par l'institution de leurs lois s'affranchir de la tyrannie des hommes, s'y estoient soubmises avec infamie & s'estoient reduites à les aller chercher dans leurs terres & à se prostituer à eux par des voyes horribles.' In Rosane, 'elles ne souffrent les hommes qu'afin que leur race ne perisse pas.' In Antiope, however, the men of the race exist in the subordinate position occupied by women in the rest of the world:

3. In La Prazimène, Alcide, Axiane and Le Prince ennemy du tyran respectively.
5. Id., X, 1781-2; cf. id., III, 385-91.
In all cases involving Amazons, woman has achieved heroic status by wholeheartedly adopting the criteria accepted in the world of men. In pursuing gloire, she renounces love as a part of her life (not necessarily definitively) and frequently acts as an example of how its debilitating effects can be counteracted by a suitable devotion to physical action. When Zénobie, the Amazon queen, marries Odenat, the wedding is not celebrated in terms of male/female submission, 'en festins superflus, ny en delices effeminez', but as a union of two sources of strength, with tourneys and physical combats of all sorts. The sensual side of love is severely restricted:

Jamais Zénobie ne coucha que deux fois en sa vie avec Odenat, dont elle eut deux fils, Herennian & Timolas, & depuis se contentant de ces deux enfans, elle ne l'a plus receu dans son lit, & ils n'ont vecu ensemble que comme un frere & une soeur.8

The woman who lacks the strength or the physical vertu to establish her own position in the world must rely on the efforts of her champion to maintain her status. Her vertu thus consists in protecting her moral independence during the period while the hero is proving his devotion to her, so that she can be sure of her position when the time comes to hand her honour over into his keeping. The "severity" which is a general feature of the female characters in the main stream of heroic literature is clearly understood by

7. Antiope, I,259. The cult of the Amazon in literature found its parallel in real life with the admiration accorded to those women who distinguished themselves in the predominantly male world of warfare, such as La Grande Mademoiselle and the redoubtable Madame de Saint-Balmont who reputedly killed or captured more than four hundred men (see Tallement des Réaux, Historiettes, ed.cit., II,596-7). The Académie Française also took the subject seriously if we are to judge by the Discours des Amazones (Bibl. de l'Arsenal MS 3259,fol.61-72), seemingly delivered in 1655, which seeks to establish as many facts as possible about the Amazons: their historical existence is taken for granted.

both author and reader to be a temporary measure safeguarding the woman's honour in the transitional period between first acquaintance and marriage. The hero accepts it because the ultimate relationship will be one in which he will be the undisputed master.

In the Greek romances and in l'Astrée, the heroine maintains her independence by a strict chastity which requires her to reject her lover's advances:

je n'ay jamais obtemperé à vostre vouloir comme à un amant, ains vous ay la foy promise comme à mon espoux des le commence­ment que je me donnay du tout à vous, & jusques icy me suis maintenue nette & impolue, non seulement de l'effait, mais aussi du parler, en vous repoussant plusieurs fois que vous avez atenté de faire vostre plaisir de moy. 9

This purity sometimes reaches a quasi-mystical level. In the Histoire éthiopique, it is a necessary condition of the working out of the divine plan for Chariclée; in Clytophon et Leucippe, the heroine is subjected to the test of the Grotte de Syringue, inhabited by Pan, and is hailed as almost superhuman when she emerges triumphant, her virginity proved by the playing of the magic flute. 10

In Amadis de Gaule, no importance is attached to chastity. Indeed, there are a number of episodes in which the delights of physical passion are described at some length, which is no doubt what led Camus to exclaim that the work was 'une eschole d'amour, mais, Dieu, de quelle amour !' 11 On the other hand, great stress is laid on fidelity. The test of the Isle Ferme which plays an important part in the adventures of the various heroes is so devised that no-one can pass through who has 'fausé ses premiers amours', and Apolidon and Grimanèse who established the test and later Amadis and Oriane pass through gloriously, even though they are not chaste. There is also, however, a certain ambivalence

11. And Brantôme to declare, with a different emotion, 'je voudrois avoir autant de centaines d'escus comme il y a eu de filles, tant du monde que des religieuses, qui se sont jeadis esmeues, pollues et depucelledes par la lecture des Amadis de Gaule' (Des Dames galantes, 3 vols., Paris, (1933), III, 37).
towards women: an element of latent brutality towards them lies not very far below the surface and the stage had certainly not yet been reached at which any woman was worthy of respect and deference simply by virtue of her sex. When a spear is hurled at Amadis, he pursues his assailant who shouts that she is la Géante de l'Isle Triste, his enemy. 'Quand Amadis entendit que la personne qu'il poursuivoyt estoit femme, ne la voulut plus avant suyvre: Mais commanda à Gandalin aller apres, & la tuer s'il povoit.' 12 It is not chivalry which restrains him but the fact that there is no honour to be gained from fighting a woman. In Le Romant heroïque, those women who are not an unattainable ideal seen in visions in mystic grottoes are debauched temptresses who try to bring knights to their ruin. 13

In all these predecessors of the heroic novel, the assumption is made quite openly that the object of the male's pursuit is possession of the female. The heroine acknowledges the fact equally straightforwardly and, within the limits prescribed by the need to preserve her moral independence, she responds positively:

Inexorable Leucippe! ... jusques à quand me veux-tu priver du doux fruit de mon amour? Ne voix-tu point combien d'accidens nous surviennent au despourveu? ... C'est pourquoi puis que nous voici maintenant en lieu de seureté, avant qu'un plus grand malheur nous arrive, ne laissions pas eschapper une si bonne occasion. 14

Mon fils, dit Astrée, en l'interrompant, je scay bien que vous m'aymez plus que je ne merite, mais quelque grande que soit vostre affection, elle ne sçauroit surpasser le desir que j'ay d'estre aymée de vous, car en fin, Celadon, je veux que vous soyez tout mien, et que désormais il ne se puisse trouver de malheur capable de rompre les douces chaisnes dont Amour reunit nos volontez. 15

13. Le Romant heroïque, pp. 373, 736.
Lors oubliant Amadis son accoustumée
discretion, à la charge d'être impor-
tun, il lascha la bride à ses désirs.
... Grande fut l'astuce & bonne grace
qu'eut la Princesse de savoir si bien
temperer son grand plaisir reçu,
avecques une délicate & feminine plainte
de l'audace d'Amadis.16

At times, the directness of the approach leads to situations
of an impropriety which would not have been tolerated later
on in the seventeenth century.17

In some of the earlier heroic novels, the same acknowledg-
ment of the male attitude is apparent. The need for
the woman to hold him at a distance with her "severity" is
thus self-evident. Oroondate, for instance, finds that
conversation with Statira is not enough:

goustant des douceurs inconcevables
dans les légeres faveurs qui luy
estoient accordées, il trouvoit sa
mort dans la défense de celles qui
estoient réservées à un autre plus
heureux que luy : il s'en plaignoit
à la Reynne assez souvent, & comme
enfin il estoit homme, & n'estoit
point entièrement destaché des sens,
il s'emancipoit quelquefois au delà
de ce qui luy estoit volontairement
permis, & testmoignoit par quelqu'une
de ses actions qu'il n'estoit pas
maistre de ses désirs. Mais ceste
sage Princesse quoy qu'elle ne les
peut legitimement condamner, les
reprimoit avec une douce majeste.18

The hero's submissiveness towards his beloved in this
respect is an essential part of his testing, but when his
probationary period is brought to an end by the formalising
of their relationship in marriage, his subjection ceases
and the relationship takes on its proper form with the hero
acknowledged as the moral centre of the union, the source
of gloire and honour. Thus, Alcidiane, who had received
absolute obedience from Polexandre at all times, proclaims
at the end of the novel that he deserves to be the master

16. Le Premier Livre de Amadis de Gaule, fol. CXXIII.
17. cf. Ismène et Isménie, pp. 156-74, 249 ; l'Astrée, I, 115-7,
169, II, 369 ; Histoire africaine, III, 1080 ; Histoire
indienne, pp. 790-2 ; Le Roman des romans, III, 175.
of herself and her people 'par la merveille de ses actions' and hands over to him in marriage both her power and her glory.\(^{19}\) Cassandre ends with the central characters married and the men's régime of respect and obedience discarded:

Ce fut pour lors que les plus grandes beautez de la terre furent mises en proye aux passions de leurs impitoyables vainqueurs, & qu'ils se vengèrent des peines qu'elles leur avoient fait souffrir avec des ressentiments que tous violens qu'ils estoient, elles ne peurent raisonnablement desapprouver. Aussi estoient-ils en quelque façon pardonnables, & il estoit juste que ceux de qui les maux avoient esté si longs & si cruels en tirassent de grandes reparations.\(^{20}\)

The history of Parisian polite society during the first half of the seventeenth century is characterised by the increasing influence of women. As Magendie has demonstrated\(^ {21}\), the lawlessness, coarseness and scorn for learning which were so general during the reign of Henri IV slowly gave way before a concern for civilised living which women were in a large measure instrumental in establishing.

Madame de Rambouillet's salon, the best known of the centres of culture though by no means the only one, set a pattern in urbanity which was coming to be reflected throughout the whole of the aristocratic and educated sections of society.

The period of the Rambouillet salon's greatest influence was during the last years of the reign of Louis XIII, when Richelieu's power was at its height. The status of women was improving and the idea of the educated woman, if not the femme savante, found its supporters even amongst the general public. Dubosc, writing for a broad spectrum of women, spoke out strongly in favour of education for women\(^ {22}\) and in the Nouveau Recueil de lettres des dames conducted a debate with himself on the topic.\(^ {23}\)

\(^{19}\) Polexandre, V,1320.  
\(^{20}\) Cassandre, X,1195-6 ; cf. Polexandre, IV,491.  
\(^{21}\) La Politesse mondaine et les théories de l'honnêteté ...  
\(^{22}\) L'Honnête Femme, ed.cit., pp. 2, 260 et seq.  
\(^{23}\) Nouveau Recueil de lettres des dames de ce temps, 3rd edn. (Paris, 1642), Lettre XII, Réponse XII.
After the death of Louis XIII, with Anne of Austria in power as Regent, eulogies of womankind proliferated and pro-feminist propaganda appeared on every bookseller's stall. *Le Triomphe des dames*\(^\text{24}\) sets out to refute the slanders perpetrated by men about women and to show that woman is superior to man intellectually, morally and even, on occasion, physically. Dubosc reiterates his support of education for women in his new work, *La Femme heroïque*, ridiculing those men who are opposed to their wives becoming educated for fear of being surpassed.\(^\text{25}\) *Le Moyne* demonstrates in his *Gallerie des femmes fortes* that, for every male heroic virtue, there is a female equivalent worth just as much if not more. Gilbert pursues the same aim, maintaining that the one way in which men surpass women, namely in physical strength, is in itself a proof of their inferiority:

> *la Nature mesme le luy enseigne, comme elle a fait aussi l'homme plus robuste que la femme, & sa force est une marque de sa servitude ; quoy qu'il ne l'avoue pas par ses paroles, il le fait connois- tre par ses actions.*\(^\text{26}\)

All these works, together with the multitude of panegyrics addressed to the Queen Regent, consciously devalue the qualities traditionally ascribed to heroism and substitute for them the moral virtues to which, they claim, women have a natural propensity. According to Gerzan, men see their honour as dependent on fighting on almost any pretext and losing their chastity as early as possible: such "virtues" betray brutality and weakness, whereas women choose those virtues which are more agreeable to God, those which resist the senses.\(^\text{27}\) *Le Moyne* echoes him: 'pour faire


\(^{25}\) *ed.cit.*, I, 261-4. This point is taken up by Madeleine de Scudéry who has nothing but scorn for the Arnolphes of her day, 'qui ne regardent les Femmes que comme les premieres Esclaves de leurs Maisons, qui defendent leurs Filles de lire jamais d'autres Livres que ceux qui leur servoient a prier les Dieux' (Le Grand Cyrus, X, 587-8). Damophile, her version of Philaminte, is equally derided, however: 'comme il n'y a rien de plus aimable, ny de si charmant qu'une Femme qui s'est donne la peine d'orner son esprit de mille agréables connaissances, quand elle en scrait bien user ; il n'y a rien aussi de si ridicule, ny de si ennuyeux, qu'une Femme sottement savante' (id., X, 593) ; cf. Scarron, *Le Roman comique*, ed. Bénac, 2 vols. (Paris, 1951), II, 57.


\(^{27}\) *op.cit.*, p. 57.
un Homme vaillant, il faut moins de force & moins de courage que pour faire une Femme chaste.'

Saint-Gabriel supposes a world in which women are in control: there would be no war, the golden age would reappear and everyone would live happily in harmony:

L'amour y seroit reciprocement observé dans la naturelle constance des amantes, & les hommes qui par leur debordement & leur licence pervertissent l'usage des meilleures choses ne convertiroient plus les causes de leur felicité en des instrumens de leur mal-heur.

This rise in feminism rapidly made itself felt in the novel. Already in the 1620s there was an awareness that the reader wished to see a more refined relationship between the sexes than had existed in the romances of chivalry and many of the novels of adventure. Le Romant des romans, for example, contains some episodes imitated directly from Amadis de Gaule with the same licentiousness, and others embodying a much more sophisticated concept of man overcoming his passions in the name of bienséance.

When Marcassus came to produce his condensed version of Amadis in 1629, he considered it necessary to change the tone even of some of the central scenes to accommodate the new sensibility. The original version opens with Elizène going at night to the room of Périon who has arrived as a stranger at her father's castle, urged on by her maid Dariolette. Marcassus has reduced Dariolette to a mere supporting role, while Elizène becomes a paragon of reserve and modesty:

Certes il estoit bien plus croyable, que la secrette vertu du Soleil adouciroit les rigueurs de la Scythie, que les fleuves les plus impetueux arrêteroient la violence de leurs eaux, & que les animaux les plus nez au sang & au carnage change-roient de naturel, qu'il n'estoit vray semblable que cette humeur farouche & sauvage au possible se pût en quelque façon obliger.
It is Péron who seduces Elizène and the whole encounter, like all the relationships between the sexes portrayed in the book, is wrapped up in the language of galanterie with a good deal of stress on the external manifestations of emotion - 'ces soupirs, ces propos interrompus, ces paroles imparfaites, ces frequents allées & venues, ces devoirs & ces respects qu'il vous rend,' etc. 32

By the time the heroic novel was well established, the feminist approach was influencing not only the terms in which relationships were expressed, but the nature of the relationships themselves: woman's rôle was reinterpreted in the light of the greater respect due to her and her superior moral strength. As the century progressed, the belief in the supremacy of the will gave way before an awareness of the irrational elements in love. 33 Love was seen as an irresistible force which could swamp the reason, but there was an important proviso: the sexes were not considered to be uniformly susceptible. Nature had given woman a greater capacity for resisting her passions and listening to the voice of reason: 'la Volupté ne la touche pas à l'esgal de l'homme, ou si elle le fait, son sexe a des retenues qui manquent au nostre, & qui reprimant la violence de leurs Passions; 34 'la raison est plus absolument obeye dans leur esprit que dans les esprits des hommes.' 35

Man, on the other hand, disregards his reason with fatal abandon once love has been allowed to creep into his mind. All his honourable resolutions count for nothing when he is confronted with the one he loves or with physical temptation. Most damning of all, he has no idea how weak he is. A nobleman called Cariolan gives some encouragement to a woman who has made obvious advances to him, his intention being to see how far she will go and then recount the incident to his lady for her amusement: 'mais en cela je fis une espreuve certaine, que la plus grande sagesse qu'un homme

33. See above, Chapter IV.
35. Gerzan, Le Triomphe des dames, p. 23.
puisse avoir, est de se defier de soy-mesme : ... je me vis plongé dans une damnable volupté.' He has to lie to extricate himself from a difficult situation and it is only some time later that he realises he has done wrong. 36

Credited with this greater ability to control her passions, woman was shown to enjoy a superior moral strength which entitled her to a different kind of relationship with the hero who loved her, one in which his gloire was not necessarily taken to be the focal point of their union but in which she could require him to pursue honour and glory with the aim of setting them unconditionally at her feet.

Some of the major heroic novels reveal differences in emphasis on this point. In Ibrahim, the hero's reputation dictates the heroine's submission: Isabelle bids Ibrahim disregard her qualms at his departure and ensure that he does not give in to her weakness. 37 Cassandre depicts something of a struggle for supremacy between male and female interests. Oroondate is shown eager to be off to the wars, while Statira is equally eager to keep him with her. They each declare an undying passion while in fact working somewhat coldly towards their own ends. Oroondate murmurs that Statira will quickly forget a suitor as unworthy as himself:

Cruel, luy dit-elle en l'interrompant, ma douleur vous devoit contenter sans m'en faire naistre de nouvelles par vos soupçons desobligeans, vous parlez contre vostre pensee, & vous ne laissez pas de m'affligier veritablement. Ah ! Cronte, & maintenant Oroondate, que j'ay bien plus de sujet de craindre que l'absence effaçant ces legeres idées de vostre esprit ne vous fasse repentir de la peine que vous avez prise, pour une personne que vous n'aviez veue que de nuit, & dans le trouble, & en qui du depuis le temps, & la longue frequentation vous auront fait remarquer des deffauts que les tenebres vous avoient cachez. A cela, repondit-il froidement, il y a si peu d'apparence, que je ne vous feray point de nouveaux sermens pour vous oster une creance de laquelle je m'asseure que vous estes tres-esloignée. 38

36. Orasie, II, 270 et seq.
37. Ibrahim, III, 787.
In the end a compromise solution is reached to this emotional blackmail. Oroondate insists on departing, but Statira commands him 'de ne hazarder que bien à propos ce qui n'est plus à vous, si vous ne voulez revoquer le don que vous m'en avez fait ... ; ... Je vous ay voué tant d'obeissance, repliqua-t-il, que je ne m'esloigneray jamais de vos commandemens, & me conserveray pour vous revoir d'aussi bon coeur que je me fusse dispensé de ce voyage, si l'honneur & le depart d'Artaxerxe, que je ne puis ny ne dois abandonner, me l'eussent peu permettre.'

In novels published only a few years later, it is more likely that the hero will ignore the call of gloire if it conflicts with his desire to fulfil his obligations to his lady. Pacore disregards his father's request to him to return home and defend his country because he is with his beloved, 'attaché par des chaisnes si belles & si plaisantes.' Armetzar, son of Tamerlane the Great, not only rejects his father's command to rejoin the army in the fight against Bajazet, recognising no other title than that of Ladice's suitor, but at a later stage actually abandons Tamerlane's cause and his own chances of glory to subject himself totally to Ladice:

Non, Tamerlam, ne me retenez plus, & plustost que de m'obliger à vous suivre, scachez que j'ay fait veu d'aimer, & que cette profession dispense les enfans de l'obeissance des peres, quand ils en exigent contre leur amour. Si vous me reprochez que je fay plus d'estat d'une Fille que d'un Empire, & que je cheris peu la gloire, à qui je prefere un honteux servage, avouez vous mesme qu'il y en a plus à temoigner de la fidelité que du courage, & que la constance est la vertu des grands hommes, où l'autre se rend commun jusqu'aux animaux.

Cyrus has little difficulty in making his desire for glory submit to his love for Mandane: 'le desir de la Gloire est

40. Alcide, I,499.
41. Ladice, II,253.
une passion aussi bien que l'amour ; & une passion dominante ; & une passion imperieuse, qui n'a pas accoustumé de ceder. Mais apres tout, je n'ay point d'interest où celuy de ma Princesse se trouve. For these heroes, the greatest glory is no longer to be found in action and self-fulfilment, but in subjection to the beloved.

In general, a slackening of emphasis on action and a greater concentration on the hero's concern with his mistress can be noted during the period of the heroic novel's popularity, particularly when a novelist made more than one contribution to the genre, such as La Calprenède. His Cassandre is full of battles and single combat, a world dominated by men and male values, whilst Cléopâtre contains very little heroic action, the attention being focussed almost entirely on the love intrigues and galanterie.

Chevreau's Scanderberg devotes a good deal of space to descriptions of military actions, including a naval battle and a highly technical account of the siege of a fortified town. The same author's Hermiogène avoids all commitment to physical action. The hero's first reported act is not one of great prowess, but an attempt to have himself sacrificed for the sake of his beloved, over whom he falls ill. When it is necessary for the author to show his hero confronting the Romans, he spends as little time on it as possible:

Il ne perdit point de temps en cette occasion, & sans occuper long temps vostre patience, apres un combat qui dura si peu, vous sqaurez en deux mots qu'il n'eut gueres plus de peine à les defaire qu'à les rencontrer.

42. Le Grand Cyrus, I, 136 ; cf. Cléopâtre, XI, 253 et seq.
43. Even real-life heroes were apparently infected by this attitude, as a letter from the duc de Guise to Mazarin, written while he was on the Naples expedition of 1648, shows. Protesting at the way the Cardinal had removed Mademoiselle de Pons from the convent where she had been installed by the Duke before his departure, he writes: 'ny l'ambition ny le desir de m'immortaliser par des actions extraordinaires ne m'a embarqué dans un dessein sy perilleux que celuy où je me trouve mais la seule pensee de mieux meriter les bonnes graces de Mademoiselle de Pons en faisant quelque chose de glorieux' (Bibl. Mazarine MS 2117, fol. 242-3).
44. Scanderberg, II, 139-56, 461-74.
The service performed by a hero for his lady, which had always been a feature of chivalric literature, was reinterpreted in accordance with the new position of woman. In the heroic tradition, the hero justified himself as a suitor by proving that he was capable of glorious deeds, regardless of whether the lady had authorised him to do so or not. Thus, Phélismond is pursued to Denmark by Polexandre for claiming that he alone is worthy of Alcidiane. When Phélismond turns out to be courageous and généreux, Polexandre gives him permission to serve Alcidiane: 'Jusques icy vous n'avez esté mal traitté que pour ce que vous n'avez pas esté connu. Lors qu'Alcidiane sça aura quel est Phelismond, ... assurez-vous qu'elle changera de sentiment', almost as though Polexandre were empowered to admit new suitors in Alcidiane's name. Similarly, in Scanderberg, it is agreed that a woman must accept the advances of a man who has demonstrated his love for her: 'comme l'amour est une operation vertueuse, ... il faut sans doute que celle qui est aimée reponde par sa vertu aux sentimens de celuy qui l'aime, puis que l'ingratitude ne peut estre jointe à la vertu. ... la Dame doit donner son amour à celuy dont elle connoist estre veritablement aimée.'

The new feminism rejected such a concept as perpetuating the subservience of women. The deeds a man chose to perform had no value other than that which the lady deigned to place on them: it was she who decided what she would accept as service. In Bérénice, Sabine has been rescued from a fire by Cécinna who declares his love to her, assuming that the service he has just rendered will carry weight in his cause, but the ladies listening to the story are unanimous in rejecting this extraordinary idea which, if applied, would require them to accept the advances of any man of courage:

Cet homme, dit-elle (Bérénice), estoit mal instruit de pretendre qu'un service de cette nature deust faire quelque impression sur l'esprit d'une personne qu'il vouloit toucher par sa passion. Il est vray, adjousta Junie, se meslant

46. Polexandre, II, 863.
47. Scanderberg, I, 200, 202.
à ce discours, qu'il ait fait peu de différence des services que les hommes se vantent de nous rendre. Car quoi que celui qu'il rendit à Sabine dans cette rencontre fust très-considerable, il ait bien conçu que ce ne sont pas ceux-là qui nous doivent toucher davantage. Je le tiens bien insensé, reprit Berenice, car comme le plus grand secret de se faire aimer, est de faire croire ou connoître qu'on aime : il n'y a point de doute que le genre de services qui témoignent plus d'amour, exigent plus de reconnaissance. De cette sorte sont ceux qui partent d'un principe de fidélité & de constance, comme peut être un respect fort grand & beaucoup d'attachement, & non pas principalement ces extraordinaires services qu'on peut attendre de tous les hommes qui ont un peu de générosité. Je le croy comme vous, ajouta Sabine ; mais ce n'est pas que ceux-là joints aux autres n'ayent beaucoup d'effet ; mais aussi sans eux ils en ont fort peu : car il s'ensuivre qu'on devroit non seulement aimer tous ceux que la fortune obligeroit de nous en rendre, mais aussi tous ceux qui pourroient en avoir la volonté, comme sont tous les hommes de coeur.48

It is not even essential for service to require courage at all as long as it furnishes proof of utter devotion. When Oriane is stabbed by a rejected suitor, her three remaining suitors react in different ways. Polidarque pursues and kills the would-be assassin, Aristide tends the wounded Oriane and Burideme faints. In the ensuing debate as to who showed the greatest feeling for Oriane, Euridème has the warmest support.49

49. L'Illustre Amalazonthe, pp. 200-228. Euridème's devotion is abject. He tells his rivals: 'Je l'ayme seulement pour l'amour d'elle, & non pour l'amour de moy. ... Vous l'aymez, orgueilleux, mais par la consideration de la recompense que vous esperez : Pour moy je l'ayme toujours par l'estat present des choses, je ne crains pas qu'elle me soit rigoureuse, & je n'espere point qu'elle me soit favorable, je l'ayme seulement par ce que je l'ayme' (pp. 227-8).
The type of relationship which resulted was one in which the man gave all in total submission, whilst the woman was not obliged to give anything. The severity which a woman had used to protect her honour during courtship in order to be able to hand it into the keeping of the hero she loved when they married was replaced in some novels by a cult of male submission for its own sake. Severity became the woman's way of retaining power over her lover. As long as she does not declare her feelings, 'elle tient alors veritablement en sa puissance le bonheur ou le malheur de son Amant : & c'est proprement en ce temps-là qu'elle est Maistresse & qu'il est Esclave.' As soon as she admits to loving him, he feels he has a right to demand further proofs of her affection and loses his subordinate position. It is necessary that he should abandon all hope and surrender his destiny totally to the lady he serves:

C'est ainsi ... que j'ayme mon adorable Princesse ; je l'ayme seulement parce qu'elle est belle, que son esprit est ravissant, & pour ses vertus toutes heroïques. Il est vray que j'espere, mais ce n'est pas contre les regles que je me suis prescrites, & cet espoir n'apporte point de tache à la pureté de mon amour. J'espere, non d'estre un jour aymé de Ladice, mais bien d'avoir la preference de la servir sur tous ceux qui me la voudront disputer.

She can reject him but still refuse to allow him to turn his attentions elsewhere; she can, like Axiane, tell her lover, after tremendous services on his part, that she can no longer admit him as a suitor, to which the correct response is continued devotion, as Cyrus shows: 'allons partout, vivons heureux ou malheureux, mourons, pour quelque sujet que ce soit, il n'importe, si Axiane le commande : c'est à ma souveraine à disposer de son sort, & il sera toujours tres-glorieux à Cyrus d'avoir contribué par ses services quelque chose à son contentement.' She will not tolerate jealousy, since it would suggest that she had

50. Le Grand Cyrus, VI, 1221.
52. Axiane, p. 695.
some obligation towards her suitor: 'il me devoit laisser 
la liberté de mes actions, s'il est vray qu'il m'ait donné 
de l'empire sur les siennes,' cries Cléopâtre, furious that 
Coriolan should have written her a letter accusing her of 
inconstancy.  

The ultimate expression in the heroic novel of the 
feminist trend is found in the précieux attitudes of 
Madeleine de Scudéry. Indications of an opposition to 
marrige are visible in Ibrahim, where Axiane rejects it 
as 'une captivité qu'on devoit esviter, autant qu'il estoit 
possible,' but this becomes open hostility in Le Grand 
Cyrus. Sapho asserts that matrimony is 'un long esclavage', 
a form of subjection which destroys moral equality. All 
husbands are potential tyrants. But as well as subjecting 
one partner to the other, marriage inevitably kills the love 
which may have preceded it. The advice given is uncompro-
mising:

l'amour peut aller au delà du Tombeau, 
mais elle ne va guere au delà du Mariage : 
c'est pourquoi je suis persuadée que 
quiconque veut tousjours aimer doit 
n'espouser jamais la Personne aimée.  

Sapho fit connoistre ... que pour 
s'aimer tousjours avec une esgalle 
ardeur, il falloit ne s'espouser 
jamais. 

More general feminist principles are enunciated. Fathers 
should not oblige their children to marry against their 
inclinations; men should be prepared to accept women on 
the same terms as men, acknowledging their mental abilities 
instead of judging them solely by their beauty. Throughout 
the novel, the portraits of female characters emphasise 
their wit, intelligence and learning.

The kind of relationship proposed as an ideal in Cyrus 
and Clélie, the amitié tendre so derided by satirists of 
préciosité, was in a sense an attempt to re-establish moral 

56. Id., IX, 1703-4.  
57. Id., X, 1029.  
58. Id., VII, 115.  
59. Id., X, 647-50. All these points are remade in Clélie; 
   cf. B. Treloar, 'Some feminist views in France in the 
equality between the sexes. The passions were seen to be potentially uncontrollable. Though they were the source of pleasure, they could all too easily become the cause of emotional disaster. Love was almost certain to bring with it jealousy and pain\(^60\): amitié tendre on the other hand stopped short of overwhelming passion. It was a relationship which cultivated the pleasure to be gained from the interplay of two minds and took away the need for either party to feel subject to the other, but it went deeper than mere esteem arising from the recognition of merit and obligation based on services rendered.\(^61\) It was not a relationship, however, which could have found a place in the world of Polexandre or Oroondate.

The changes discernible in the ideal of heroism owe much to the trend towards feminism. The hero had been a man with an urge to self-assertion, ready to oppose anyone who seemed to want to subject him morally, including, if necessary, the woman he loved, since love was only one feature of a life devoted to heroic endeavour. He had become a man whose sole object in life was to serve the lady he loved, submitting all other aspirations to that one alone. Love had become an end in itself.

To a certain extent, such a progression was a return to the ideals of courtly love, of neo-platonism, of d'Urfé's honnête amitié, but the resemblance could never be more than partial because of the realisation during the seventeenth century that love was an involuntary passion which, however love might be idealised, posed a threat to the carefully elaborated code of emotional restrictions on which heroic love was based.\(^62\) With the power of the passions in mind, certain writers concluded

\(^{60}\) See below, Chapter XII and Clélie, VIII,1250.

\(^{61}\) Clélie, IX,363-4.

\(^{62}\) See Sister J.Sassus, The Motif of Renunciation of Love in the seventeenth century French Novel (Washington, 1963) for an alternative view that the strongly idealised love of this period derived from the post-Tridentine diffusion of Christian ideals.
that the only safe relationship was one from which passion-ate feeling was excluded - the amitié of the précieuses - but such a relationship had little to do with the sub-limity and affirmation of liberty on which the heroic novel had been founded.
CHAPTER VI
History and Fiction

The past was a perennial source of interest to the educated during the seventeenth century. The demand for historical works must have been healthy judging by the number produced, and Martin's analysis of the contents of some of the private libraries of Louis XIII's reign confirms that there was a considerable interest in history, particularly amongst the noblesse de robe. Pontchartrain had 'une foule d'ouvrages historiques de toutes sortes, concernant notamment l'Allemagne et l'Italie'; Anne Mangot, doyen des maîtres des requêtes de l'hôtel du Roi, had 'une série complète de livres d'histoire', and Eustache de Refuge's library of over a thousand volumes included 'une riche collection de livres d'histoire.' The noblesse d'épée, not generally noted for bibliophily, sometimes also betrayed a preference for history: the duc de Luynes' few books included a small number of classics and 'un peu plus d'ouvrages historiques peut-être'; Charles Thiersault, a gentilhomme ordinaire du Roi, had quite a large collection, including 'surtout, beaucoup de livres d'histoire.' Overall, as an element in private libraries, history occupied second place only to theology and works of piety. Martin notes too that in later years, under Louis XIV, the interest in history had increased:

on éprouve d'autre part une immense curiosité pour l'histoire générale ou nationale. ... Passionnés pour l'histoire nationale, [ils] recherchent les récits des règnes des grands rois, les histoires locales, les mémoires de grands personnages et leurs biographies. ¹

¹. Livre, pouvoirs et société ..., pp. 522-4. Ariès explains the interest of the robes in history by the fact that it was in historical documents that they found the justification for their own prerogatives (Le Temps de l'histoire, Monaco, 1954, pp. 217-8).
³. Id., pp. 934, 937.
History was respected because it presented truth, and the historian's function was to set out his material as dispassionately as possible: 'c'est une règle constante qu'un bon Historien est obligé de publier le bien & le mal des choses & des personnes dont il traite, sans que l'amour ou la haine, l'espoirance ou la crainte l'en doivent jamais dispenser.' The material to be presented could however be selected to reinforce the impression which the writer hoped to make upon the reader. History was seen as a series of memorable incidents to be studied in isolation rather than as a continuum and consequently tended to be anecdotal in its presentation. There was little question of objectivity in the modern sense, the aim being rather to build up a picture, using a variety of factual or at least generally accredited data which would have the desired edifying effect.

A respected historian such as Mézeray thought that history was written for one of three reasons, none of which could nowadays be described as objective: 'ou pour la gloire de ceux qui ont fait les belles actions et pour la honte de ceux qui ont commis des laschetés ; ou pour la curiosité et le plaisir, ou enfin pour l'utilité et l'instruction de ceux qui les lisent.' He considered it perfectly legitimate suddenly to recount a number of remarkable incidents which had only the most tenuous of connections with the matter in hand, with an airy 'le lecteur n'aura pas désagréable que je luy rapporte trois choses fort rares.'

The major interest of the historian was in depicting the exploits of great individuals who served as examples to the rest of mankind: history was 'la gardienne de la réputation des hommes illustres, & des exemples notables qui nous ont devancé.' Its function was therefore moral in that it impressed on the reader an edifying or monitory spectacle which might influence him in his own life: hence the importance in pedagogy of 'le récit de l'historien qui nous fait

4. La Mothe le Vayer, Oeuvres, ed.cit., I, 235.
connaitre les motifs qui ont guidé l'action des hommes illustres, ses vertus, ses défauts, quels moyens il a utilisés pour s'élever, comment il a réagi au succès, à l'échec.  

History, other than that of the period since François Ier which was felt to be indissolubly associated with the present, tended to be written around these illustrious figures but the received tradition was expected to be restated by each new generation. Ariès has written of 'l'attachement du public à une version traditionnelle dont il admet, dont il exige, qu'elle soit enjolivée au goût du jour, mais sans changer le canevas désormais fixé.'

From an early stage, the novel was condemned by historians and moralists, particularly clerics, because it was based on imagination and fantasy rather than truth and was thus not only devoid of moral value but could do positive harm by distracting the mind from the reality of the human situation. For Camus, 'les Romans sont ou totalement fabuleux, comme les Amadis & les Bergeries ; ou bien ce sont des Histoires qui ont quelques principes veritables, comme les faits de Charlemagne, les exploits de Godefroy de Bouillon & semblables, mais qui sont remplis de tant de feintes & de contes frivoles, ridicules, & dont l'impossibilité fait voir la fausseté, que tous ces fatras se terminent en fadaises.'

Dubosc considers that history provides all that the novel has to offer, plus the essential factor of moral utility: 'quel contentement peut-on chercher dans les Romans, qui ne se trouve dans l'histoire ? ... En effet, puisqu'on trouve le divertissement avec l'instruction dans l'Histoire, pourquoi veut-on diviser le bien utile d'avec l'agréable, quand on les peut joindre ensemble ?' The danger in novels lies in the attractive picture of love which is presented, seducing young people from the path of virtue and injecting poison into their souls.

8. op.cit., p. 162.
9. La Pieuse Jullie, histoire parisienne (Paris, 1625), Dessert au lecteur, p. 573.
The partisans of the novel during the 1620s and 1630s tended to base their response to these criticisms on a justification of the rôle of the imagination. Why should writers not be granted the same freedom as painters to exercise their powers of invention? Why should novelists be condemned when poets are not? Gerzan maintained that the requisites for a novel were that 'l'invention en soit belle, l'oeconomie judicieuse, & la narration bien suivie. Avecque cela il faut nécessairement qu'il y ait beaucoup d'intrigues, qui soient souvent divisées pour tenir tousjours le Lecteur en haleine.'

Langlois questioned whether history had any right to be considered more truthful than fiction: 'il y a une infinité d'histoires qu'on pense estre fables & une infinité de fables qu'on pense estre histoires.' Readers of Heliodorus would have been familiar with Amyot's argument that man had a need for 'divertissement' and 'refreschissement' which could be satisfied by history because of the diversity it offered: but history was 'un petit trop austere pour suffisamment delecter, à cause qu'elle doit reciter les choses nuement & simplement, ainsi comme elles sont avenues, & non pas en la sorte qu'elles seroient plus plaisantes à lire.' Fortin de la Hogue developed the argument:

L'Histoire veritable ne nous represents les choses que comme elles sont, & avec tous leurs defauts, ses evenemens dependent plus de la fortune que de la raison, & leur narration devient bien souvent ennuyeuse, pour ne produire aucun succes qui soit extraordinaire ; là où au contraire dans les Romans tout y est grand, les vertus & les vices y sont extremes & recompenses toujours selon la loy du merite ou du demerite. Mille belles aventures impreveus y surprennent le Lecteur & le tiennent toujours en haleine, sous l'esperance de quelque autre nouveauté qui soit encore plus merveilleuse.

13. Le Tombeau des romans ou il est discouru I Contre les romans II Pour les romans (Paris, 1626), p. 91. The second part of the anonymous Roman de l'incogneu, ensemble quelques discours pour et contre les romans (Paris, 1634) is a reprint of Le Tombeau des romans but in the wrong order, since the arguments 'pour' are an answer to points made 'contre'.
During the 1630s the rôle of the imagination was superseded as the main justification for the novel by a new argument, aimed at establishing a less defensive position vis-à-vis history. It was claimed that the novel was a kind of prose epic with rules of its own. The novelist had the same commitment to verisimilitude as the historian: he would spend time describing the geography, ethnography, ceremonies, etc. of the countries in which his story was set, in the same way as the historian would, and the intervention of supernatural forces was proscribed. He also had the same moral aim as the historian, to depict the discomfiture of vice and the honouring of virtue. There was one essential difference between the novelist and the historian, however, which in the eyes of some established the superiority of the former. The historian was bound by the facts of the situation he was describing and was obliged to reflect the baser and less uplifting aspects of life as they occurred in his story: the novelist could concentrate solely on the heroic and inspiring aspects of life and thereby induce a more effective moral response in the reader. For Boisrobert, the novel's use of fictional material results in a more edifying depiction of life: novelists describe actions 'non pas telles qu'elles sont, mais bien telles qu'elles doivent estre; C'est sans interest qu'ils condamment les laschetez & les trahisons, & qu'ils honorent la sagesse, la Justice & la vaillance. Ils contraignent les coupables de rougir en leurs consciences aussi bien que les vrays Historiens, & mieux qu'eux ils savent animer les hommes de coeur à maintenir le droit & la raison jusques au dernier souspir de leur vie.' Desmarets argues that history and fiction should be combined: history on its own is arid, fiction on its own is 'vaine & chimerique', but of works in which the two are united, 'plus ils sont pleins de feintes parmy la verité, plus ils sont

16. For a useful survey of the various approaches to the prose epic theory of the novel, see Ratner, Theory and Criticism of the Novel in France from l'Astree to 1750 (s.l., 1938), pp. 17-31; cf. also Dallas, Le Roman Francais de 1660 à 1680 (Paris, 1932), Chapter I.
beaux & profitables; pource que la feinte vray-semblable est fondée sur la bien-seance & sur la raison; & la verité toute simple n'embrasse qu'un recit d'accidens humains, qui le plus souvent ne sont pleins que d'extravagance.' Straightforward history cannot approach the beauty of a work in which history and fiction combine to guarantee the triumph of virtue.18 The author of Clorinde agrees, arguing that the novelist can illuminate history by making the reader enter into the sentiments of great figures from the past. The reader 's'interesse dans leur bonne et dans leur mauvaise fortune, presque avec autant de chaleur qu'il le feroit en celle de quelqu'un de sa connoissance, ou mesme de ses amis.'19 Le Vayer de Boutigny proclaims the absolute superiority of the novel for moral reasons:

dans la verité qu'il (i.e. the historian) nous descrit, l'innocence est souvent opprimée par le crime; Au lieu que dans les Romans la vertu triomphe toujours & que le vice ne manque jamais d'estre puni.20

Truth to life became the novelists' rallying-cry. A minority felt it necessary to call for the overthrow of the imagination: 'quelque liberté que l'on donne aux fictions, il n'est pas permis de faire des livres seulement pour satisfaire à nostre imagination.'21 Freedom of invention was left to 'ces esprits grotesques, qui entassent une infinité d'aventures mal digérées & sans fondement sur l'Histoire; & les ayant exposées sans jugement, sans art & sans grace, laissent les Lecteurs dans la seule satisfaction qu'ont ceux qui se resveillent apres une resverie embarrassée & ennuyeuse.'22 Most novelists established their credentials by constructing their plot around some historical figure and by building in as much local colour and accredited detail as possible. Guérin de Bouscal assures his readers that he has consulted books and maps to gain an authentic picture of the world of Theseus; Lemaire claims to have adhered scrupulously to

22. Desmarets, Rosane, Preface.
what is accepted as truth about the age of Sémiramis; Chevreau has taken the legends surrounding Scanderbeg and removed those elements obviously not based on fact. The author of Axiane puts forward a rigorous view of truth, arguing that the novelist should produce 'une copie de la vérité', neither adding to nor taking away from it, but himself admits to certain inventions, adding 'pourveu qu'elles soient toutes possibles, je m'assure qu'elles ne seront pas hors de propos.'

In the cause of historical accuracy and verisimilitude, the preface to Ibrahim stands out as something of a manifesto. Scudéry declares that without vraisemblance, the reading of novels is merely distasteful: 'je tiens que plus les aventures sont naturelles, plus elles donnent de satisfaction.' If necessary, the expression of heroism must be subordinated to the need for realism:

> Il est hors de doute que pour représenter la véritable ardeur herofique, il faut luy faire executer quelque chose d'extraordinaire, comme par un transport de Heros; mais il ne faut pas continuer de cette sorte, parce qu'autrement ces actions dégénèrent en contes ridicules, & ne touchent point l'esprit.

It would be misleading, however, to conclude that the heroic novel was committed primarily to a realistic portrayal of a historical figure and his world, and to apply modern criteria in assessing the degree of accuracy achieved by the authors. If novelists felt it necessary to declare their interest in history and verisimilitude, it was because they wished to dissociate themselves from the disordered adventure novels written by Du Verdier, Du Bail and others, with their sequences of disconnected events and incongruous characters. Thanks to these authors, imagination had come to be identified with the most fantastic imbroglios and had to be disowned.

24. La Prazimène, I, Au lecteur.
27. Ibrahim, Preface.
28. As Magendie tended to do (Le Roman français, pp. 222-34); cf. Coulet, Le Roman jusqu'à la Révolution, I, 136-7; Boorsch, 'About some Greek romances', Yale French Studies 38 (1967), p. 81
29. For examples of such works, see Du Verdier, La Sibille de Perse (Paris, 1632); Du Bail, La Céfalie (Paris, 1637); Du Verdier, Fuite de Rozalinde (Paris, 1643).
But imagination in the sense of an ability to create stirring situations and maintain a level of suspense was still very much a prerequisite for the novelist. Leaving aside the theories put forward in prefaces, the aims of most of the writers of heroic novels, as far as they can be deduced from the novels themselves, were threefold: to stir the reader's imagination, to provide moral edification and to produce a historical picture (or more accurately a certain amount of atmosphere) of the period and the hero-figure in question.

Those writers who offered imagination and suspense were likely to be successful with the public, who looked for such qualities rather than historical truth. Of Condé, who read Cassandre while on campaign, we are told:

> Il a lu pour son plaisir plus que pour son Instruction, et n'a pas laissé de s'instruire dans la lecture. Il ne s'arrête pas au détail ni à la finesse des auteurs; mais il est touché des beaux endroits, et les choses extraordinaires lui sont tout à fait sensibles.30

Segrais defines the aim of the novel as 'divertir par des imaginations vray-semblables & naturelles': he mentions most of the principal heroic novels approvingly and in each case commends them for their imaginative qualities:

> Où en peut-on voir de plus extraordinaires (i.e. imaginations), & de mieux écrites que dans le Polexandre? Que peut-on lire de plus ingénieux que l'Ariane? Où peut-on trouver des Inventions plus heroïques que dans la Cassandre? des Caractères mieux variez & des aventures plus surprenantes que dans la Cleopatre? La seule Histoire du Peintre & du Musicien qui se lit dans l'illustre Bassa, ne ravit-elle pas, & ne vaut-elle pas seule les plus riches inventions des autres? Qu'est-ce qu'une personne qui sait le monde ne doit pas dire de l'admirable variété du Grand Cyrus ... ?31

---

30. Eloge de Condé, Bibl. de l'Arsenal MS 3135, fol. 61-69.
Sorel has much the same attitude:

Polexandre, dont les inventions sont hautes & magnifiques ... ; Cassandre et Cleopatre contiennent plusieurs beaux exemples d'amour & de valeur ... ; Artamene - c'est un livre remply d'aventures Heroïques ... ; En ce qui est de tous les Romans qui ont esté nommez, on lôte en quelques-uns les inventions, en quelques autres le langage.32

The imagination, when properly applied, was used to present an idealised picture of man's aspirations, a hero capable of reaching a superhuman level both in the field of sheer physical action and in the extremely restrained world of social intercourse, as embodied in the concept of honnêteté.33 The reader would be inspired to emulate the deeds of the hero and model his social attitudes on those of the world in which the hero moved: 'il est presque impossible de lire un beau Roman sans ressentir en nous une aversion du vice, ou que nostre desir ne soit touché de l'emulation des belles actions qui s'y lisent.'34 It was important therefore that the novelist should not restrict himself to the confines of recorded history with its mixture of noble and ignoble events and motives.35 In using the heroes of antiquity as a vehicle for the expression of an ideal, the novel was acting as an extension for adults of the "classical stories" used as material for the teaching of morality to children, a technique identified by Snyders:

L'art des pédagogues du XVIIe siècle a consisté à trouver une série de personnages antiques qui, bien présentés et au prix de multiples coupures, puissent incarner ces vertus, en devenir les emblèmes pour ainsi dire vivants - et des personnages assez nombreux pour qu'ils puissent constituer une sorte de monde dans lequel on invitera les enfants à vivre.36

32. La Bibliothèque françoise, pp. 183-5, 187; but cf. his views on the treatment of history in novels in La Maison des jeux, I,390-1.
33. It is however notable that the earlier heroic novels display more imaginative power than the later ones, as Morillot (op.cit., p. 4) and Coulet (op.cit., I,170-1) have pointed out.
35. Langlois had argued that the novel could be of use if it were specifically not tied to history (Le Tombeau des romans,p.61).
36. op.cit., p. 76.
Such a portrayal of the hero represents a qualitative change from the romances of chivalry, in which an individual was chosen or invented in order to allow a sequence of events to be recounted with some sort of consistency. In the heroic novel, the events are recounted in order to set off the figure chosen as subject. The hero is not so much put into his historical setting as taken out of his period and elevated to a level where he could be an embodiment of ideals considered to be valid for all ages. It is not surprising in such circumstances that so many heroes seem to be interchangeable, regardless of the period in which they are supposed to have lived, since their creators were all striving to express a fundamentally similar ideal of heroism.

It is for the same reason that the heroic novel so often betrays a marked medieval flavour, even though the plot is ostensibly set in the ancient world. The long tradition of medieval romances still exercised a strong influence but equally important is the fact that the Middle Ages represented better than any other period the ideal of the heroic individual who, though subject ultimately to the political and social order, carried the ideals of society in himself. The knight errant was justice, courtesy and honour incarnate and brought them out into the world rather than representing them on behalf of some distant authority. 37

The medieval elements which seem so incongruous to the modern reader in novels dealing with the ancient world are in fact limited to certain specific and conventionalised areas, viz. those where the highest expression of individual prowess is required. The tournament provides this par excellence because it allows a straightforward trial of strength and skill in a properly regulated context of courtesy and honour. Nothing the ancient world had to offer in the way of games or spectacles could do this, and consequently tournaments are made to take place in every age and civilisation. Arms and

37. cf. the argument put forward by Chapelain in his De la lecture des vieux romans, ed. Feillet (Paris, 1870), pp. 21-22.
armour are another feature used variously depending on the requirements of the plot. If a hero of the ancient world is demonstrating his prowess in a battle, he will probably wear tunic, greaves and breast-plate. If, however, he presents himself as an unknown challenger in a tournament, destined to win the admiration of all by his courage and skill with his rank playing no part in his gloire, he will wear complete medieval armour covering him from head to foot so that he is not recognisable. The helmet is particularly important, especially in the numerous instances when a woman dons armour and goes to war. Sorel thought no doubt that he had hit upon one of the great weaknesses of the novel when he derided the use of such anachronistic forms of armour, but truth in the novel was not necessarily fidelity to history. Fidelity to the ideal of heroism

38. De la connoissance des bons livres, pp. 106-8. Sorel implies that such anachronisms are due to the stupidity of the novelists and asserts that the meanest village sculptor or painter would know better. In the light of his comments, it is worth noting that separate conventions applied in the texts of novels and in the engravings which accompanied them. In Volume VII of Cléopâtre, there is an episode where Artaban is attacked by Tigrane and his men. Tigrane is wearing 'un petit chapeau ombragé de quelques plumes noires' but the rest of his body, we are told, is armed in the same way as his men. They appear to be wearing the medieval style of armour, since one of them is killed by a sword pushed 'par l'ouverture de la visiere'. The frontispiece to the volume, however, which depicts this scene, shows Artaban defending himself against seven men who are wearing tunics, breastplates and helmets of a style clearly belonging to the ancient world. The frontispiece to Volume I of Mitridate shows the opening episode of the novel, where Ariarates attempts to escape from the besieged city of Ambracie, capital of Epirus. All the soldiers are wearing arms appropriate to the period and carrying small Grecian shields, though in the text there are references to visors and at one point, Pyrrhus being wounded, another man is dressed up in his armour so that his army, who see only the outward symbol, shall not be demoralised. The walls of the city and the background, on the other hand, are depicted in the frontispiece as medieval, with a portcullis and pavilion-tents. The same combination of classical costume and medieval architecture is found in the engravings accompanying the text of other novels, including the splendid plates in Ariane. Presumably, some of what was accepted as a convention in the text of a novel was sufficiently incongruous if shown pictorially to require modification. See D.Canivet, L'Illustration de la poésie et du roman français au XVIIe siècle (Paris, 1957), pp. 52-59, for comments on the conventional nature of most plates in heroic novels, especially those by Chauveau.
and the moral function of the novel came first, and seems to have been what the readers looked for. It is often assumed that the public was prepared to suffer the historical anachronisms of the heroic novel for the sake of the romanesque entertainment offered: 'sans doute, les lecteurs les moins avertis de La Calprenède et de Mile de Scudéry se doutèrent qu'il y avait infiniment plus de mensonge que de vérité dans les extravagances du roman héroïque. On se laissa néanmoins charmer par ces extravagances, tant que le goût dominant du public fut porté vers les fictions romanesques plutôt que vers la peinture exacte des réalités morales.' Was it not rather that they found in the heroic novel a statement of the moral reality they acknowledged, expressed in its highest form?

The claims to historical verisimilitude made by novelists were really an attempt to establish their credentials as serious writers. They felt that they had created a worthwhile form of the genre with something positive to say about man, in the same way that l'Astrée had made a contribution to knowledge of the human emotions. They were offering realism in the sense of a depiction of truths about man's capacity for action and glory, as it was understood at the time. They therefore wanted to be dissociated from the unreality of the romances of chivalry and the romans d'aventures. History gave their works dignity and status.

There was, however, no theory of éloignement, no attempt to set a distance between the reader and the subject. On the contrary, the ancient and the modern worlds were felt to be closely linked because they shared common ideals. The characters chosen to be heroes of novels tended to be those who were presented to children as models to be imitated,

the great men of republican or early imperial Rome, of the semi-mythological age of Greece, of the age of Alexander: they were all assimilated to the seventeenth century and made part of an entirely contemporaneous expression of greatness. If Condé could be compared successively to Germanicus, Alexander the Great and Julius Caesar for his military prowess, these heroes of antiquity, when they appeared in novels, could equally be expected to share the sensibility he displayed. There was nothing incongruous in suggesting that Julius Caesar should weep and even faint when he parted from his beloved since Condé, his modern incarnation, could do so.

It is natural, therefore, that, as the type of hero depicted in the heroic novel was modified to keep pace with the change from an ideal of aristocratic individualism to one of social gentility, so the conception of the historical characters representing those ideals should change accordingly. The picture of ancient (and modern) virtue given in Clélie is different from that given in l'Histoire celtique or Alcide and to the modern reader perhaps more ridiculous, but the object of the authors was the same, to express an ideal which their contemporaries could recognise as their own in a framework borrowed from past ages felt to have shared some of the same aspirations.

40. Scudéry reveals in the preface to Almahide ou l'esclave reine 8 vols. (Paris, 1660-63) the beginnings of an awareness that the manners of one period cannot necessarily be transposed to another period: 'comme il est dangereux d'introduire l'usage de l'Antiquité dans nostre Temps, il ne l'est pas moins de faire remonter celuy de nostre Temps jusques à l'Antiquité.' This is a more rigorous view than that held by most novelists but it does not affect the ideals he is trying to represent and in practice Almahide shows no more historical sense than any other novel.

41. The 'Eloge de Mr le Prince' (Arsenal MS 3135) tells us that after Rocroi he was compared to his ancestor, the victor of Cérisolles, after Fribourg to Germanicus, after Nordlingen to Alexander the Great and after Dunkirk to Julius Caesar. After Lens, 'les comparaisons cesserent et il n'y eust plus d'exemple pour luy que luy-mesme'.

PART II
It has been shown in Part I how the heroic novel, outwardly committed to relating the exploits of a particular kind of individual, reflected the evolving aspirations of a generation living through a period of rapid social, political and ideological change. Once the form was established, authors found it convenient to continue using the same framework— a main plot begun in medias res, supporting a large number of tiroirs including the earlier life of the hero and heroine— while modifying profoundly the concept of heroism embodied in the hero and the kind of subject-matter included in the episodes. The novels of 1660 may look similar to those of 1640 but the type of hero depicted has undergone a number of radical changes in order to accommodate the new world-view current after the Fronde. Features which were essential in the earlier novels, such as moral autonomy, have been largely discarded in the later ones.

A number of novels stand out from the majority by their length and by their greater popularity. They were the ones which set the pattern for the rest and were instrumental in imposing the successive modifications to the definition of heroism. Other novelists followed where Gomberville, Scudéry and La Calprenède, the authors of these major works, led. For instance, novels published before 1641 quite often contained supernatural elements. La Prazimène has an airborne chariot pulled by dragons, belonging to the magician Zoroastre; Polexandre includes a magic ring left over from the earlier versions; La Cythéréee contains a monstrous man-devouring snake. After the publication of Ibrahim with

1. IV,393 (rectified).
2. III,600-7; cf. IV,128 et seq., IV,260.
3. Part II.
its insistence on verisimilitude, such elements virtually disappear from the novel. Those that remain are acknowledged rather shamefacedly. Guérin de Bouscal not only tries to justify his inclusion in Antiope of supernatural elements such as Médée's airborne chariot — he has not, he claims, brought in any incident 'dont la possibilité n'eût eu des partisans en quelques endroits du monde'4 — but he also attempts to give quasi-scientific explanations for magic phenomena: the enchanted ring which she had given Jason to make him invisible, Médée carefully explains to Égée, was simply an extension of the principle by which lenses can make objects appear smaller.5 Again, the kind of hero portrayed in Cassandre provides a direct inspiration for a number of novels, including Scanderberg, Alcide and Axiane.

The following six chapters analyse these major novels individually (including two proto-heroic works, Ariane and l'Histoire celtique), showing how their authors used the standard forms of the novel to project their personal interpretation of the ideal of heroism. It is noticeable, however, that in some cases an author would modify his own definition of the hero in order to take account of innovations introduced by other writers. Scudéry's Cyrus has absorbed a number of features from La Calprenède's Cassandre but conversely the latter's Cléopâtre has been influenced by Cyrus. The implication here is that the individual author's concept of heroism was, in part at least, conditioned by his response to the mood of the public as he recognised it in the works of rival authors and depended on his assessment of what his readers would like to see. These major works thus provide a valuable indication of the way in which the aspirations of the literate classes evolved from the ideological confidence of Richelieu's day to the moral ambiguities of the post-Fronde period.

5. II, 33-4; cf. the alternative explanation put forward in Le Grand Cyrus, V, 120-2.
CHAPTER VII

The Proto-heroic Novel

Ariane and

L'Histoire celtique

Tallemant des Réaux described Desmarets de saint-Sorlin as having 'un esprit universel et plein d'inventions' and suggested that Boisrobert feared him because of it. Whether Desmarets made a conscious attempt to outshine Boisrobert in every sphere is not clear, but within a year or two of his entering Richelieu's service, he had published a novel which surpassed not only Boisrobert's Histoire indienne but all the other derivatives of the Greek romances in its scope and in the manner of its execution. Both Ariane\(^2\) and the Histoire indienne reveal their authors' indebtedness to Heliodorus but with an essential difference. Boisrobert, while exercising

---

2. References are to the first quarto edition, L'Ariane de Monsieur Des Marets, ... De nouveau revue, et augmentée de plusieurs Histoires par l'Auteur, et enrichie de plusieurs figures (Paris, 1639). The two-volume octavo edition of 1632 is rare and its text is largely the same as that of the 1639 edition. The copy of the 1632 edition in the Bibliothèque nationale contains the same text as the 1639 edition despite the claim that more stories have been added in the latter, though it is possible that augmented editions were published between 1632 and 1639 using the original engraved titles (see H. Gaston Hall, Jean Desmarets de Saint-Sorlin: his background and reception in the seventeenth century, unpublished PhD thesis, Yale, 1958, p. 387).
his imagination on the nature of the adventures which befall his heroes and the countries through which they pass, remained within the framework of the French version of Greek romance, as developed by Rumée and Gerzan. Desmarets added to that framework elements which, elaborated by other novelists, were to be taken up in the depiction of idealised heroism.

Certain episodes and features of Ariane are clearly inspired by the *Histoire éthiopique*. In each work, importance is attached to the presenting of prizes by the heroine to the hero after his victory in public games; the sacrifice of one of the chief protagonists is narrowly averted; the final assumption of royal rank is found to be in keeping with a divine prophecy. Other features point to the influence of *l'Astrée*, such as the fact that the hero and heroine come from *familles at feud*. Palamède, inseparable companion of the hero Mélinte, is a reincarnation of Hylas, with the same attractive gaiety and incorrigible inclination to inconstancy: he and Mélinte conduct a discussion on the nature of love which closely parallels the arguments of Hylas and Silvandre. Verse is used by Desmarets in the same way as d'Urfé to underline points of deep emotion.

It would perhaps be unfair to include amongst the list of Desmarets' borrowings from d'Urfé the former's fondness for playing on the reader's prurience, though Guéret imagined Ariane complaining that every book of her novel contains at least one 'lieu infâme' and that she is made to appear naked because Astrée had done so before Véladon. Ariane has far more licentious episodes than *l'Astrée*, more than can be accounted for simply by the fact that standards of decorum had not risen very much by 1632. At times, the effect of introducing farcical or indecorous scenes into the narrative is to destroy temporarily the heroic tone built up elsewhere.

---

5. e.g. the episode at Corinne's house in Book VI. H. Gaston Hall argues however that Desmarets used such episodes to show the disastrous effects of sensuality in contrast to the constant love of Mélinte for Ariane (*op. cit.*, p. 44).
Though he owes a good deal to these predecessors, Desmarets is by no means a slavish imitator. He reveals a genuine talent, particularly in the creation of characters who, by the standards of the later heroic novels, are endowed with individual features. The most interesting of these is Epicharis, Ariane's suivante, who acts with initiative to deflate the pompous, locking the importunate Marcelin in a pavilion for two days when he thinks he is waiting for Ariane or adding on days of service to the list kept by a boorish suitor who thinks he is working towards the end of his servitude. Caractères are introduced into the narrative, such as Garamante, the conceited anti-feminist whose presumption has to be exposed by Ariane, or the melancholic Misandre, or the haughty Zélinde who develops a strange mocking relationship with Palamède.

The introduction of these characters is in keeping with the general "bourgeois" tone of the work. Almost all the tiroirs are concerned with characters from the middle ranks of society, citizens of various Mediterranean cities, and the emotional intrigues in which they become involved. Even those stories which deal with princes and princesses lack a heroic dimension, presenting the same sort of love intrigue and implying that there is no difference between the emotions of a person of royal blood and those of ordinary people. The ideal of ultra-refined feeling, qualitatively surpassing that of ordinary mortals, had not yet become a vital ingredient of the novel.

Mélinte himself is, by the standards of subsequent novels, a hero of very modest stature. He does not succeed in imposing himself on the world like an Alexander or a Cyrus (nor does he aspire to), but has to submit to the laws and sometimes the whims of those in power — the Emperor Nero, his favourite Marcelin, the Roman Governor of Thessaly. He is of respectable

6. Book III.
origin, being the son of Hermocrates, the deposed Sicilian leader, but cannot claim to rival the great Roman patricians: when Princess Araxie falls in love with him, he tells her he does not think 'que ce fust une alliance sortable que celle d'un Gentil-homme Sicilien avec une Princesse du sang des Parthes.'

He and Palamède arrive in Rome, motivated not by a desire to conquer the world but only by 'un honneste desir de voir le siege de l'Empire.' Though both of them make an impression on the Romans with their admirable qualities, Mélinthe does not emerge as anything more than a promising young man. He is more 'retenu', Palamède more 'prompt & entreprenant.'

The relationship between the hero and heroine likewise has more in common with the Greek romances than with the heroic novel proper. Mélinthe and Ariane are drawn mutually towards one another. Except for a natural sense of modesty which she shares with all virtuous women, Ariane does not indulge in the kind of severity which Polexandre was to endure. She never suggests that Mélinthe is being outrageously presumptuous in daring to love her. On the contrary, having decided that she loves him, she finds no difficulty in declaring her feelings unequivocally:

Je promets que je ne seray jamais qu'à Mélinthe : j'y suis obligée par son merite, encore plus par son affection ; & luy estant redevable de l'honneur & de la vie, je remets l'un & l'autre en ses mains, comme choses qu'il a acquises, & dont il peut mieux disposer que moy-mesme.

Mélinthe, je suis à vous, & sans vous je ne puis vivre : Voyez en quel endroit du monde vous voulez me retirer, je m'estimeray bienheureuse d'y mourir avec vous.

Nor does she reproach Mélinthe for his ardour, but gently keeps him in the path of virtue. Mélinthe responds with confident respect, having no need for abject deference. The trust between them is so great that she is prepared

---

11. p. 276
12. pp. 5-6.
15. p. 481.
16. e.g. p. 359.
to allow Mélinthe to pretend love for Emilie if it enables him to escape more easily from her influence.\(^\text{17}\)

The plot does not therefore derive its impetus from the tensions between the hero and heroine, as was to become normal in later heroic novels. A united couple, Mélinthe and Ariane are pushed from one perilous situation to another by the persecutions of the Emperor Nero and of Ariane's uncle and guardian, Dicéarque. Most of the novel is spent in flight: direct retaliation is excluded by either deference and honnêteté or the emperor's authority.

Though all this suggests a parallel with the Greek romances, there are strong indications that Desmarets wanted to create a much more positive and admirable kind of hero than Héliodore and Tàtie had done. For one thing, Mélinthe is a man of considerable valour. Desmarets operates on the same principle as the authors of the romances of chivalry, that a hero should be capable of astonishing feats of butchery based on sheer strength:

\[
\text{il donna un tel coup à l'un, que sans qu'il estoit armé, il luy eust séparé l'esaule du corps (p. 135).}
\]

\[
\text{Mélinthe se destourna légèrement, & en passant luy fendit le bras gauche d'une blessure si grande, qu'il emplissoit de sang toute la place par où il couroit (p. 136).}
\]

\[
\text{poursuivant le premier qu'il rencontra il luy fendit le front, & le sang qui luy coula en abondance sur les yeux l'aveugla, & le mit hors de combat (p. 143).}
\]

In the first battle against the Scythians, he fights with the enemy chief, smashes his helmet to pieces and splits his head in two.\(^\text{18}\) In the second battle, 'il fendoit les testes, il abbatoit les espaules, & ses enemis croyoient que ce fust Mars luy-mesme qui fust venu pour les destruire.'\(^\text{19}\) The duel against Pisistrate, the man whose hostility had almost led to Mélinthe's being sacrificed, ends with Mélinthe cutting off his opponent's head with one stroke.\(^\text{20}\)

\(^\text{17. p. 95.}\)
\(^\text{18. pp. 665-6.}\)
\(^\text{19. p. 706.}\)
\(^\text{20. p. 755. Desmarets had an eye for curiously gory details, e.g. Palamède chops off both the hands of a soldier who, having no means of staying on his horse, falls to the ground but finds his face saved from contact with the ground by 'les mains secourables' he had just lost (p.143-4); cf.the dubious pun on p.757.}\)
Most of this prodigious energy is expended against ignoble opponents. Only once does Mélinpte find himself matched against someone on his own moral level. Amongst the group of pirates who have attacked his ship, he crosses swords with Eurymédon who 'faisoit parestre tant de force & d'adresse, que Mélinpte jugea que c estoit là un ennemy digné de luy.' Having beaten him, Mélinpte is content to disarm him, and it is from this point that the contest of générosité begins. Eurymédon declares his intention of serving Mélinpte with his sword and his life, 'car il faut que vous soyez le plus vaillant de tous les hommes, pour m'avoir mis en cet estat.' Mélinpte responds in the only way a true hero could:

Mélinpte touché de ces paroles, qui partoient d'un coeur bien généreux, & sentant quelque emotion en luy qui le convioit à l'aimer, soit pour la grace qui accompaignoit son visage & son parler, soit pour une secrette affection que tous les vaillans hommes ont les uns pour les autres, luy tendit la main, & l'ayant embrasse l'asseura de son amitié.

Desmarets evidently intended his hero to be more than simply one man amongst many. He belonged to a brotherhood of généreux, an immediately recognisable higher caste who were to provide the sole centre of interest in many of the later heroic novels.

The encounter with Eurymédon is the exception in a series of fights necessary to prevent oppression. The afflicting look to Mélinpte for help and assume correctly that he delights in using his valour to combat what he takes to be the injustices of fortune: his 'grandeur de courage ..., qui ne voit rien au dessus d'elle, & qui merite que tout le monde luy cede, se plaist à relever la noblesse & la vertu quand elle les trouve abatues par la fortune.' Before setting out at the head of the Thessalians to do battle with the marauding Scythians, he takes on all the charismatic qualities of the heroic leader, though these attributes had

---

23. p. 263.
not been particularly noticeable in the earlier books set in Rome. His stature increases (literally, it seems) as he 'sembloit ce jour-là plus haut que de coutume, & avoit je ne scay quoy d'escintelant dans les yeux, & de resplendissant sur le visage, qui le fairoit parestre quelque Dieu descendu en terre pour le secours de la Grece & de l'Empire Romain.

... sa seule mine sembloit inspirer une partie de son grand courage à ceux qui alloient combattre sous sa conduitte.'

This valour is founded on a conviction on the part of Mélinde that all difficulties can be overcome by intelligent action. He believes that the gods do not intentionally bring about the ruin of those with a will to survive, but always leave open the possibility of escape if only the individual has the initiative and the courage to pursue it. He is just such an individual, 'd'un courage qui ne s'estonnoit point pour le danger, & d'un esprit qui trouvoit incontinent des expediens.'

When Ariane inveighs against heaven in the manner of Leucippe or Ismène - 'Helas ! disoit Ariane, il semble que la furie de nostre mal-heur assemble des forces de tous les costez de la terre, pour nous oster tout espoir de salut. Quel crime, bons Dieux, avons-nous commis, pour permettre que les hommes nous poursuivent avec tant de rage ?'

- Mélinde comforts her and assures her that the gods will provide a way out. When the house in which they are staying is set alight by their enemy Marcelin who is waiting outside to ambush them, he is concerned but immediately sets about finding a solution:

Esperons encore, Madame, & moderez vos pleurs & vos plaintes, cependant que je vay voir par quel moyen nous pourrions nous sauver, & si quelque Dieu ne m'inspirera point ce que nous devons faire en cette extrémité.

24. p. 662.
25. p. 218.
27. pp. 130-1.
When Ariane weeps at the prospect of his being killed in battle, lamenting that it is always the most courageous who run the risks while the cowardly shelter behind them, he explains that facing up to danger is the surest way of nullifying the arbitrary workings of fortune:

qu'elle distinction feroit-on entre les courageux & les lasches, si jamais il n'y avoit de peril ? mais au moins on se doit consoler de ce que dans les combats plus on est valeureux, moins on court de fortune ; car il est bien plus avantageux d'aller au devant des dangers en attaquant & en donnant la peur & la mort à son ennemy, que de combattre faiblement ou de fuir avec lascheté en recevant l'une & l'autre.  

His belief in the value of self-reliance and individual effort shows Mélinte to be made of heroic stuff. It is a belief which is expressed more firmly as the novel progresses and the extent of his heroic stature is revealed just before he is to be sacrificed. In comforting Ariane, he declares that death is an acceptable alternative to a life of contented inactivity if it comes when gloire is at its highest:

Hé bien, Ariane, disoit-il, qu'avions-nous plus à desirer des Dieux, sinon de nous laisser jouir en repos de nostre amitie ? S'ils me refusent une vie oisive, & s'ils m'ordonnent la mort lors qu'il ne me reste plus d'honneur à acquérir, dois-je me plaindre d'eux de ce qu'ils me retirent au periode le plus illustre de ma vie ?

This feeling in Mélinte that happiness is to be found not simply by avoiding troubles and settling into a peaceful married life but by earning the satisfaction of a great reputation points away from the tradition of the Greek romances and towards the heroic novel proper. Desmarets drew his inspiration mainly from Heliodorus and was therefore led to create a plot in which malevolent opponents were the chief obstacle to success. If he had been created in the mould of Theagenes, Mélinte might never have emerged from

---

29. p. 756.
the mass of Sicilian citizens to make his mark upon the world, if it had not been for the movements of fate and the passions of others. However, he has been endowed with a force of character which, particularly towards the end of the novel, makes it inevitable that he will be acknowledged as a leader and attain great glory. He has become the sort of man to impose himself upon the situations confronting him, to dictate how life is to treat him, to retain his moral independence by means of action, rather than the kind of figure found in the romans d'aventures of Du Verdier and Du Bail, forced by fortune into unlikely situations and saved from ultimate disaster only by luck.

Though Mélinte's commitment to gloire is not as developed as Oroondate's or Britomare's was to be, it nonetheless gives him an honourable place at the head of a line of greater heroes and marks Ariane out as something new emerging from the tradition of passivity in the novel.

Hotman de Latour, the author of the Histoire celtique, did not have Desmarets' talent for telling a story or his ability to create convincing characters. His novel, however, represents an important step towards the delineation of a complete hero. The intention, we are told in the Advertisement, is to present 'un Heros parfait', such that neither Cyrus, Aeneas, Achilles nor Odysseus can be compared to him. The setting for his appearance is Gaul in the pre-Roman period, centred on Marseille at a time when the Carthaginians had established themselves there, and the hero in question is Palingène, recognised eventually as the grandson and heir of Timarque, Roi des Gaules. The whole work is concerned with his success in ridding his country of the Carthaginians and with his love for the fair Célanire. Only five books were published, the author promising a further five if the public's reaction was favourable, so the hero's ultimate triumph at the climax of his monarchical and emotional careers can only be assumed.
From the start, the reader is left in no doubt that Palingène is a being of such exceptional qualities that he exists on a different plane from the rest of humanity. Within the first few pages, his extraordinarily forceful character is established. A prisoner of the Carthaginians, he is driven together with other slaves into a mine, but his expression and bearing are such that his captivity is turned into a triumph:

Il s'y remarquoit une telle majesté, qu'il ne sembloit pas tant demander de la commiseration, de l'assistance & de l'amitié, que promettre la liberté aux compagnons de sa mauvaise fortune, la clemence à ceux qui soumettroient leurs volontez aux siennes, & aux Barbares, qui le tenoient captif, ou la servitude ou la perte de la vie.30

All his fellow-slaves look to him as their leader, even another aristocrat who becomes his constant companion:

'[Cleomedon] l'avoit à son arrivée remarqué par dessus tous les esclaves, & reconnu en son visage je ne sçay quoy d'illustre & de grand, qui luy estoit un signe infaillible d'une parfaite noblesse.'31 Wherever he goes, the effect of his charisma is immediate: 'Les Dieux avoient imprimé sur le front de PALINGENE un si royal caractere que tous ceux qui le consideroient & qui le sçavoient bien cognoistre devenoient incontinent esclaves de ses volontez.'32 From an early age, he had been noted for his wisdom, his skill at all forms of exercise and his natural grace.33

Palingène's valour is affirmed at many points, though without a great deal of space being devoted to descriptions of him in action. The desired impression is mostly achieved by suggestion: in battle, he 'tailloit en pieces autant d'ennemis qu'il en rencontroit: ... son courage valoit beaucoup plus que cent hommes.'34 The author is careful too to avoid straining credibility too much. To kill twenty men

30. I,5.
32. I,203-4. The printing of all names in capitals is presumably an attempt to increase the heroic flavour of the work.
33. II,547.
34. II,502.
within half an hour is considered impressive enough.\textsuperscript{35} Nor is he invincible, for at a crucial moment in the plot, while defending Célanire, he is beaten down by superior numbers and left for dead.\textsuperscript{36} Like his other qualities, however, Palingène's valour is in a different category from that of other mortals: he is clearly differentiated from his companion Cléomédon, 'qui par des effects prodigieux de son courage eust rendu sa valeur egale à celle de PALINGÈNE, si elle n'eust esté incomparable.'\textsuperscript{37}

This superhuman status is part of a divine plan, for providence watches over Palingène. His escape from captivity, for instance, is made possible by the intervention of the gods, 'qui avoient arresté de tout temps de le rendre le plus glorieux homme de la terre.'\textsuperscript{38} They send a violent storm which scatters the Carthaginians; lightning strikes one of the prisoners dead and burns through the fetters of Palingène who is standing alongside, without harming him. An earthquake completes the destruction necessary for his escape and he succeeds in rallying a small group of survivors, ultimately forming an army and defeating the enemy.

The author constantly impresses upon the reader the idea that heroes operate according to special imperatives, a code of behaviour related to gloire and vertu. The text is reinforced with maxims stating the general principle behind the action which has just taken place, e.g.

\begin{enumerate}
\item Aussi est-ce l'ordinaire des grands courages de n'aimer point à estre violentez, n'y ayant rien qui les fasche davantage que de se voir forcez aux choses qu'ils ne desirent pas, principalement par des personnes qui leur sont inferieures (I,\textsuperscript{165}).
\item les maux servent aux courages nobles d'un fort aiguillon à la vertu (II,\textsuperscript{641}).
\item Il n'y a rien qui oblige d'avantage les Grands que la modestie, & qui avance plus à la gloire & à l'honneur que l'humilité (II,\textsuperscript{477}).
\end{enumerate}

\textsuperscript{35} I,100.
\textsuperscript{36} III,901-2.
\textsuperscript{37} I,200-1. My italics.
\textsuperscript{38} I,84.
Qu'il est indigne d'un grand courage d'apprehender la mort jusques au point de s'humilier pour une telle crainte envers une personne qui nous est inférieure (I, 73-74).

Similarly, passages of verse are interpolated in the text, not as in l'Astrée or Ariane to provide lyrical intermissions, but to emphasise noble sentiments and draw attention to particularly important tenets of heroism, such as the duties of kingship or the hero's attitude towards fate:

C'est le propre d'un grand courage
De se roidir contre le sort,
Et de s'opposer à l'effort
De la tempête et de l'orage,
Surtout quand il void en danger
Son amy pour le desgager (I, 98).

Hotman de Latour was concerned that his readers should be quite clear as to the qualities necessary in a hero and evidently believed that such heroes could exist in an imperfect world.

Though it is created as the abode of supermen, the world in which the story takes place is realistic in comparison with that depicted in the contemporary derivatives of the romances of chivalry, such as those by de Logeat. There are detailed descriptions of Carthage, its buildings, harbour, public places, exports, etc., references to political divisions in Sicily, evocations of ceremonies in Marseille39, and so on. However, by a technique which was to become standard practice in the heroic novel, Hotman de Latour raised this ostensibly normal world to a level of splendour and magnificence which put it outside the range of experience of the ordinary reader: the trappings of life, the clothes, furnishings and decorations within which the characters display their heroic qualities, are superb, too richly made for any but the highest level of society. Each detail is described in turn. Mériassanthe's tent is of velvet and cloth of gold, covered in precious stones with windows of crystal.40 She invites Palingène into her chariot: 'l'estoffe en estoit d'ivoire & d'ebene enchassée d'or & d'argent : le daiz de velours noir rehaussé d'une riche broderie faite à fleurs naturelles,

d'où se formoient des couronnes & des festons accompagnées de trophées d'amour & de guerre.¹⁴¹ A substantial part of the story takes place on the Isle de Titan, an earthly paradise with everything to delight the eye and the palate. There are vines and fruit-trees of every sort, flowers and groves, beautiful gardens where the nobles can linger: 'les allées y sont longues & à perte de vue, accompagnées de berceaux, de cabinets, de solitudes & de labyrinthes, avec des canaux, des fontaines & des cascades d'eaux fort agréables à la vue & à l'oreille,' etc.¹⁴²

It is implied at certain points in the Histoire celtique, however, that this rarefied heroic world shared certain features with Parisian polite society to which the majority of its readers would belong and, by extension, that even the more ordinary person belonging to that society could participate to some extent in the ideals of heroism by observing the code of honnêteté. There is, for example, a certain amount of time devoted to involved compliments made up of intricate formulas¹⁴³ and the kind of schedule of leisure which no doubt prevailed in salon circles.¹⁴⁴ In places, the concessions made to the salon audience result in a distinctly unheroic tone, as when the conversation turns to the differences between the women of various nations¹⁴⁵ or when Célanire invents a whispering game¹⁴⁶, but this was no doubt precisely the sort of interlude which appealed to the reader.

Palingène himself certainly has the correct degree of sensibility towards his beloved required by such a readership: he can fix his mind on Célanire, sigh and faint without further ado.¹⁴⁷ But there is no equivocation over the essentially male basis of heroism. Love is not allowed to take precedence over honour. Both Palingène and Célanire accept

---

¹⁴¹ I,170-1.
¹⁴² I,301-2.
¹⁴³ e.g. I,321-4.
¹⁴⁴ Ils passeront quelques heures dans cet entretien, puis toute la compagnie se mit ensemble pour s'en aller à la promenade' (III,899) ; cf. II,663-4.
¹⁴⁵ II,571-2.
¹⁴⁶ III,778-80.
¹⁴⁷ II,382-3.
that his **gloire** must be preserved at all costs if their relationship is to continue to exist. When one of the stands at a public spectacle collapses and wild beasts escape into the crowd, Palingène's first reaction is to save Célanire from the tiger which is threatening her. Having achieved this, it is honour which dictates the need to continue the rescue work: 'L'amour le voulait bien attacher près de CELANIRE, mais l'honneur l'en divertit, ayant porté son courage à servir d'exemple à tous les autres Chevaliers, qui furent témoins d'une aventure si noble & dont l'événement en devait estre si formidable.'

The main feature of **l'Histoire celtique** which establishes it firmly in the line of the heroic novel and differentiates it from the earlier type of novel is the strong commitment to heroism based on energy. Palingène is a man who is determined to overcome all obstacles. There is nothing in him of the recourse to lamentation favoured by the Greek heroes: disasters encourage him to persevere and calamities produce redoubled effort:

> Ce fut en quoy PALINGENE témoigna d'avoir atteint au plus haut point de la perfection, car il se fortifia dans une si longue suite de désastres au lieu d'en estre affoibli.49

He draws strength from within himself; his will injects moral courage into every part of his being and will not allow him to succumb to adversity. Even when his greatest hope has been dashed by the abduction of Célanire, he refuses to acknowledge that this is anything more than a temporary victory for fortune; his misery transforms itself into a new resolution and his **vertu** creates the basis of a new hope:

> il scueut faire paroistre à ses amis par une force d'esprit & par un courage invincible, tout le contraire de ce qu'ils avaient pensé : Ce ne fut pas la nécessité qui le fit roidir contre ce malheur, mais plustost une habitude qu'il avoit prise à souffrir de grandes

49. I, 90-91.
infortunes, & une vertu qui se rencontre en peu de personnes : Que si quelquesfois la foiblesse, qui est naturelle aux hommes, vouloit s'opposer à sa résolution & à la grandeur de son courage, il se faisoit alors des leçons secrètes, & se disoit à soy-mesme : Où estes-vous, ma constance, m'avez-vous abandonné ? Et vous, ma valeur, estes-vous endormie ? Prenez courage PALINGÈNE, & portez le faix de ce nouveau desastre. Voilà comme il faisoit renaistre ses esperances, & qu'il trouvoit sa propre conservation dans l'adversité.50

The actual number of heroic deeds accomplished by Palingène is not in fact very large. He is always supported by his companions when required to fight, and in battle is not particularly notable for his individual prowess. There are occasions when the chance to indulge in some lengthy description of valour is ignored by the author51; nor has he taken the opportunity to develop the image of his hero's virtue by showing him fighting against opponents who share his ideals, as later writers made a special point of doing. Palingène only ever pits his strength against wicked enemies and there are not even any tournaments in which he might meet his moral equals.

Nonetheless, the Histoire celtique stands out as a prototype of the heroic novel by its commitment to energy, the underlying belief that man's willpower enables him to rise above the arbitrary workings of fortune and impose the pattern which he has decided upon. Every episode reflects this attitude and is reinforced by a liberal use of heroic epithets designed to exalt human endeavour and make it admirable in its own right - 'tant de belles executions & d'extraordinaires prodiges de vaillance', 'les grands prodiges, les merveilles extraordinaires', 'des merveilles incroyables & des grandeurs infinis', etc. The reader is presented with a series of illustrations of human action at its highest and is invited to applaud an incarnation

50. III,960-1.
51. The most striking of such occasions is when Adalbert needs someone to subdue a rebel province : 'PALINGÈNE en ayant eu la commission l'emporta glorieusement' (II,499).
of all the best qualities in man.

Hotman de Latour was not gifted as a novelist: he did not know how to present his material, how to highlight the points necessary to give movement and tension to a story; but he succeeded in delineating a more positive heroic figure than any that had gone before. Most of the features to be found later in Oroondate and Cyrus were already present in Palingène, appealing to a public increasingly interested in men of grandeur and willpower who obey the imperatives of sublimity and exaltation, the public which responded so readily to Le Cid.
Polexandre, chronologically the first of the major heroic novels, is of particular interest because the definitive version of 1637 was preceded by three earlier versions in which Gomberville accorded an increasing importance to the part played by a central hero and which consequently provide a useful confirmation of the trend indicated in other novels such as Ariane and L'Histoire celtique.

When he first turned his mind to the adventures of Polexandre, Gomberville was apparently only nineteen years old. His reading up to that age must have included a fair number of examples of the roman sentimental in vogue at the time, since most of his first venture, L'Exil de Polexandre et d'Ericlée, is made up of a series of loosely interconnected love adventures in which young couples are prevented from achieving happiness by the attempts of their parents to marry them off to others. The world in which these characters move is an everyday world, with innkeepers, archers and sailors playing central roles. In the fifth and last chapter, the characters find and read a book entitled L'Exil de Polexandre et d'Ericlée which tells the story of Polexandre, how he came to the court of Henri II as a boy, fell in love with Ericlée, was exiled for killing a rival who had challenged him, met a hermit who turned out to be his mother and himself became a hermit. The work is in most respects an absurd concoction, fully justifying its

2. See Reynier, Le Roman sentimental avant l'Astrée, p. 302.
3. For a full account of the plot, see Wadsworth, The Novels of Gomberville (New Haven, 1942), pp. 10-11.
author's self-deprecating references to 'la vaine confusion de cette nouvelle histoire.'

There are indications, however, in the pages devoted to Polexandre's period at court that Gomberville was trying to create a type of hero somewhat more outstanding than the bourgeois characters of the *roman sentimental*. Polexandre is intended to be a paragon of chivalry, 'de qui le nom & les incomparables vertus sont espaduës par tout le monde', who, while still a youth, 'se persuadoit que les choses les plus difficiles se devoient rendre aysées par la grandeur de son courage.' Few words are devoted to the joust and the duel in which he is involved but this is compensated for by the spectacle he provides as he arrives for a tournament, announcing himself as 'l'Amour' and heading an extraordinary procession of allegorical figures representing the four elements, the twelve signs of the zodiac and so on. These same pages reveal the beginnings of Gomberville's cult of the superlative which was to develop over the succeeding editions of his work.

Ten years later, when a new version, entitled *L'Exil de Polexandre* appeared, Polexandre was still only an embryonic hero. His story here is broadly similar to that of the 1619 prototype - he is a young nobleman at the court of Henri II.

---

4. *L'Exil de Polexandre et d'Ericlee* (Paris, 1619), p. 637. The pagination is as follows: 1-610, 565-596, 579-638. References to pages within the overlapping sequences are indicated by (1), (2) or (3).
5. p. 508.
6. p. 529.
7. pp. 552-3, 571-2(1).
9. It is interesting to note, in the light of Gomberville's Jansenist sympathies, that a hyperbolic style was considered a Jansenist characteristic: 'il n'y a rien de vertueux s'il n'est heroique, rien de chrétien s'il n'est miraculeux, rien de tolerable s'il n'est inimitable. ... la mediocrité à leur goût est un vice ; ce qui n'est pas un succes est un manque-ment ; ce qui n'est pas singulier est trop trivial. Ils ne trouvent grand que ce qui est immense. Ils n'estiment que ce qui ravit ou étonne. ... Chacune de leurs paroles est une hyperbole ; chaque maxime est un paradoxe, ... toutes leurs idées sont extremes, toutes leurs promesses immenses' (F. Bonal, 1655, quoted by Maillard, *Essai sur l'esprit du héros baroque* (1580-1640), Paris, 1973, p. 76).
who falls in love with Olimpe, heads a procession of allegorical figures, fights against the Huguenots in the Religious Wars, is banished from court for a year over an incident with the royal favourite and goes to Denmark to fight Phélismond whose love for Olimpe has offended her. He does not appear until over halfway through the work and for much of the time is subordinate to other characters, such as Montmorency during the Religious Wars or Bajazet, the pirate chief, for whom he captains a vessel. Feats of individual prowess are secondary to military actions and naval battles, viewed from afar with little concern for heroic contributions. The tone of the work sinks at times to a low level in the story of Sinas, an ordinary sea-captain, and in a description of the pirates' drunken revels.

That the 1629 version represented an attempt to depict a more heroic kind of Polexandre is, however, affirmed by Gomberville: 'ne luy trouvant ny la qualité ny le merite que je luy auoir souhaité, je voulus me rendre le maistre de sa fortune et de sa condition, et ... le porter aussi haut que mon imagination pouvoit aller.' What strikes the reader is the emphasis given to the quality of the relationships between the central characters, Polexandre, Bajazet and Zelmatide, an Inca prince. They are all members of the same superior caste, having more in common with each other than with the men they command. Their contacts with one another are always conducted at a high level of courtoisie and they converse in the language of heroic générosité. Bajazet, though chief of a band of pirates who acknowledge no law but their own, constantly refers to gloire, vertu and valeur and implies that for him such qualities are always associated with altruistic morality. The relationship between Polexandre and Phélismond provides an example of the heroic outlook in

10. For an account of the plot, see Wadsworth, op.cit., pp. 14-16.
action. Though Olimpe had ordered Polexandre to challenge Phélismond, their mutual générosité draws them together and they become close friends: when they eventually fight, the combat is thus one of the highest vertu rather than of belligerent enemies.  

It was this latter aspect of the novel which Gomberville developed and refined for the 1632 version, now simply called Polexandre. Many of the episodes and descriptions have been retained, sometimes verbatim, but the tone of the work has been raised still further by the excision of the baser elements. The main emphasis has now moved to the glory of individual action. All the major characters are endowed with superhuman strength and martial skill and each is given the chance to impress both his companions and the reader in a battle-scene or duel, but their feats are executed with such concern for the tenets of courtesy that they have little in common with the butcherings described in Amadis. When Polexandre, here metamorphosed into Charles Martel, fights the duc d'Aquitaine, he knocks him off his horse but immediately jumps to the ground to help him ' & fit cette action avec une si grande générosité, que même la pensée ne luy vint pas de se servir de son advantage.' The Phélismond episode has been extended to accommodate a greater amount of généreux behaviour, with Polexandre and Phélismond each offering to die for the other. All the valiant characters admire each other's prowess and pay fulsome compliments on it.  

The 1632 version is distinguished from its predecessors primarily by the fact that the characters no longer exist merely as actors in a series of incidents: the incidents are now created as a means of allowing the characters to display their vertu. They exist in their own right, which

---

13. See pp. 119, 497-9; Book IV, passim.  
Gomberville conceded had not been the case with Polexandre in the first two versions of the novel. Once the emphasis had been moved in this way to an idealised form of behaviour, heroism could emerge in its complete form.

When the final version of Polexandre appeared in 1637, Gomberville had reached maturity as a novelist. Of the preceding versions, certain episodes were retained which contributed either to the heroic tone or to the exotic atmosphere, but the work as a whole shows a completeness of conception which is entirely new. The construction is skilful if at times confusing to the modern reader and reveals an imaginative scope which surpasses most of the other novels of the time. Having none of the inhibitions which beset those novelists who saw themselves as writers of prose epics, Gomberville eagerly takes his reader through Mexico, Senegal, Denmark and the Congo as well as the more traditional Mediterranean lands. In each, he tries to introduce the flavour of the society in question and, though the major protagonists tend to share the same cosmopolitan attitudes, there is a range of secondary characters whose features are quite clearly differentiated. In particular, the analysis of love is remarkably subtle for the period, with an awareness, not found elsewhere in his day, of the implications of the je ne sais quoi element, expressed not in long abstract discussions but through the reactions of lovers.

Gomberville had in fact succeeded in creating a new kind of novel based on a heroic view of man, affirming with confidence elements only sketched out in Ariane and

16. Polexandre (1637), V, 1329 : 'La premiere fois que Polexandre vit le jour, il le vit par la puissance d'Eolinde & le perdit aussitost qu'elle eut cesse de luy prester sa lumiere. Neuf ans apres, il sortit des tenebres & eut l'obligation de ce nouveau jour à Zelmatide & à Izatide. Car il ne fut que le pretexte de mon travail. Les deux autres en furent la veritable cause.'
l'Histoire celtique and in the earlier versions of Polexandre. There are features which suggest links with earlier forms of novel but they are in general peripheral and do not affect the central action (e.g. an occasional giant or a supernatural intervention of the sort found in Amadis, an episode or two worthy of Camus' Spectacles d'horreur). Though there is a wide range of incidents, they all relate directly to the overriding theme of the glorification of man's capabilities as embodied in a small number of exceptional beings who rise above the ordinary run of mortals.

At the summit of the pyramid is Polexandre himself, universally acknowledged to be the greatest of men. In this, the fourth and final of his metamorphoses, he is king of the Canary Islands, a descendant of Charles d'Anjou and son of the heiress of the Palaeologue line. He is visually arresting and impresses other people both by his appearance and his personality as semi-divine: "il vint au monde avec ces excellentes qualitez que l'aage, l'estude & l'experience vendent bien cherement aux hommes ordinaires. Son ame en descendant du Ciel en terre se conserva tout ce qu'elle avoit receu au lieu de son origine." The idea that he has a link with heaven is reinforced by his strong religious convictions (a feature he shares with the other heroes in his world, even though their beliefs may be pagan): he always gives thanks after a victory and works actively to spread Christianity, preaching the word in Africa and persuading the inhabitants of l'Isle du Soleil to give up human sacrifice. His mind turns naturally to helping others, so that he 'sembloit estre choisi par le Ciel, pour estre le consolateur de tous les affligez.' Those in trouble recognise at once his special destiny as a saviour: 'D'abord que je vous ay vu, il m'a semblé que vous m'apportiez le remede que le Ciel reserve pour la guerison de mes maux.'

18. II, 412.
20. IV, 98.
Polexandre's altruism and that of the other major characters is reflected in the meaning given to the heroic epithets which abound in the text. Générosité, by far the most frequently used, invariably has an altruistic sense:

- la compassion que sa haute générosité l'obligeait d'avoir des personnes affligées ... 22
- votre générosité vous faisant compati à ses horribles souffrances, ... 23
- Sa générosité s'irritant à l'objet d'un si noir assassinat, il se jeta au milieu de ces combattans. 24

Combats reflect the same interpretation of the values of heroism. Battles and duels are described only in so far as they contribute to an appreciation of the hero's noble qualities. If an encounter does no more than further the plot, it is usually dismissed very quickly, sometimes with the suggestion that mere aggression is of no real interest:

- Vous savez bien de quelle sorte un homme fort vaillant se démesle de semblables occasions ; c'est pourquoi je ne vous ennui ray point de ce qui se passa en celle-cy. Le Roy de Thombut y fit tout ce qu'un homme qui se fait nommer l'Indomptable peut faire. 25

Combats between morally comparable individuals are accorded more space but here too it is not so much the valour which merits attention as the magnanimity shown when valour has proved itself. The author is fond of producing a general impression of enormous skill and courage by the use of quasi-Homeric evocations which provide the requisite heroic flavour without committing him to any great detail. 26

If Bajazet and Zelmatide are capable of heroic actions and attitudes, Polexandre is something of a superhero, so far superior to other men that he exists in moral solitude despite his concern for their welfare. Experience has taught him that he will never be able to fit in to ordinary life, even as a king and, depending on his mood, he considers

22. II, 549.
23. III, 558.
24. I, 328
26. e.g. I, 134-5, II, 991-2.
himself destined for the greatest glory or damned to spiritual isolation and unheard-of tribulations. It is experience, too, which prompts his confident Alcippe to declare 'vous ne seriez pas ce que vous estes, si les choses ne vous arrivoient autrement qu'au reste des hommes.' While his friends seem to come to terms with opposing circumstances and manage to settle down in peace, Polexandre is pursued by fortune and feels that he will never be allowed to find happiness. His life takes the form of a quest for a goal which he comes close to considering unattainable at a number of points, that of finding Alcidiane. He has no other aim and his conscience raises no objection to his leaving his kingdom for long periods in the care of a viceroy: he returns from time to time to attend to any problems which may have arisen but becomes less and less interested in his subjects and eventually leaves for good, vowing never to return and never willingly to set foot in any kingdom other than Alcidiane's. When he is offered the throne of Zahara, he accepts to the great acclamations of the people but promptly appoints a viceroy and leaves again.

The love which drives Polexandre on is different from that enjoyed by the other heroic characters. His friends, notably Zelmatide and Bajazet, have normal relationships with the women they love, within the terms of galanterie. They make a declaration and are accepted for a probationary period during which they are kept at a distance; the woman eventually makes her own declaration and the two are married in due course. Other characters experience a much less happy form of love, being possessed by a demonic desire for another person; they lose all consideration for their status and reputation and usually come to a tragic end, a

27. II,787.
29. III,925 et seq.
warning to others of the devastating effects of passion.\textsuperscript{31}

Polexandre's relationship with Alcidiane is unique in the novel. Alcidiane is in an entirely different category from the other female characters and in fact has no predecessor in the seventeenth-century novel. She has many of the attributes of a mystical ideal, suggesting the rose in the \textit{Roman de la Rose}. She inhabits an almost unreal world, an island which is all but inaccessible, so fertile that it enjoys two harvests a year and fruits at all seasons: gold, silver and diamonds abound and the inhabitants are so vigorous that at the age of eighty they still seem young.\textsuperscript{32} Alcidiane keeps herself away from public gaze except for state occasions and makes her will known through her "slaves", ministers who wear golden chains as a mark of their servitude. The unreality is extended into the outside world, for no-one objects when she forbids a tournament taking place in Morocco or calls on all knights to avenge her upon Phélismond who has been declaring in Denmark that he alone is worthy of her.\textsuperscript{33} Very little detail is given of her appearance, since this would detract from the quasi-divine aura which surrounds her.\textsuperscript{34}

The semi-religious aspect is emphasised by the way Alcidiane is approached by those who love her. Her beauty is so perfect that many feel themselves obliged to serve her, but they are by no means all of the same type. Pisandre is socially much lower than Polexandre or Phélismond; Abelmélec is \textit{généreux} only in the sense of 'courageous' and does not live by the rules of \textit{courtoisie}. Almanzor falls in love with Alcidiane's portrait and dies, never having seen her, calling out in a pseudo-religious ecstasy:

\begin{center}
puisque comme les Dieux, ô Alcidiane, ...
\end{center}

\begin{center}
tu règnes absolument sur l'esprit de ceux qui ne t'ont jamais vuës, je me persuade que comme eux aussi, tu vois nos actions & lis mesme dans nos pensées. Tourne donc les yeux sur Almanzor & reçoys pour marque de son éternelle fidélité la vie qu'il abandonne sans regret, puisque c'est à toy seule qu'elle est sacrifiée.\textsuperscript{35}
\end{center}

\textsuperscript{31.} For an analysis of the relationships between heroes and heroines in Gomberville, see Kévorkian, \textit{Le Thème de l'amour dans l'oeuvre romanesque de Gomberville} (Paris, 1972), especially Part II, Chapters II and IV.

\textsuperscript{32.} \textit{Polexandre}, I, 116-8, II, 593-4.

\textsuperscript{33.} II, 389-91.
Almanzor-Bajazet on the other hand honours but does not feel drawn towards her service:

Je la trouve digne des voeux de tous les coeurs qui sont capables d'amour. Mais je ne suis pas assez honneste homme pour pretendre à la gloire de la servir.36

She appears therefore to act as an ideal for those who need to prostrate themselves before a wrathful divinity. Certainly Polexandre's approach to her is at times that of a man who considers himself damned, impelled towards her but knowing that death awaits him if ever he comes near her.37

The relationship between Polexandre and Alcidiane is by no means an abstract one, however. Gomberville has produced a study in ambivalence which makes Polexandre both an archetypal hero and a strongly characterised individual, an ambivalence which emerges in his dual approach to Alcidiane, as a hero and as a lover.

As a hero, he is obliged to seek for the ideal and, having identified it, to devote all his energies to trying to reach it. His holy grail is Alcidiane on her elusive island and nothing is allowed to prevent him from moving towards her. If ever the quest became hopeless, life would end: 'que tu sçavois bien, ô grand Almanzor!' he cries, 'qu'Alcidiane estoit la seule felicité que les Heros avoient

34. On the one occasion when specific features are described, her beauty is represented as almost supernatural: II,689-90.
35. I,136.
36. III,320.
37. Gomberville was associated with Jansenism in his later years and it is tempting to interpret the quasi-religious aspects of Polexandre in terms of Jansenism. In his chapter 'Un Monde Tragique' (op.cit., pp. 217-25), Kévorkian paints a picture of Gomberville's world in which man is doomed to be the victim of his passions, his heredity and malevolent "gods". However, he leaves out the all-pervading sense of providence which takes care of those areas in which man is most helpless and vulnerable and which leads him on, provided he is trying to use his reason in the cause of good. Such a view was common to many people in Gomberville's day and need not necessarily be identified with Jansenism. Polexandre credits Alcidiane with the attributes of a loving, forgiving God: she is 'l'image vivante de cet Esprit Eternel qui tesmoigne tant d'amour à ses creatures. Comme luy, vous pardonnez infiniment & comme luy, vous troublez de faveurs ceux qui par leurs démerites ne devoient recevoir que des peines & des châtiments' (V,1305). The most that can be said is that Gomberville wanted to represent heroic love as something approaching the purest possible form of love, that between God and man.
à rechercher sur la Terre ; & que tu fis bien de perdre la vie, quand tu perdis l'espoir d'arriver à cette Beauté.\textsuperscript{38} Whatever obstacles fortune puts in his way will therefore be overcome or he will die in the attempt. Maintaining a forward impetus is an essential concomitant of his heroic status.\textsuperscript{39}

On occasion, when it looks as though fortune may have succeeded in cutting him off from success, he almost gives in to despair but his will-power and devotion to his quest invariably win through. If he is left alive after a shipwreck or a battle, he takes it as a sign that he is intended to carry on his search.\textsuperscript{40} The striving is an end in itself, a destiny which he cannot escape and which must not be affected by his own weariness:

\begin{quote}
Je suis résolu de consumer toute ma vie après une entreprise qui ne me sera pas moins glorieuse que je la trouve impossible ; … je vay sans rien attendre, ny de la Fortune ny de l’Amour, m'acquitter de ce que je dois à vostre incomparable merite, à la nécessité de ma condition, & à mes propres sentimens.\textsuperscript{41}

Il faut que j'obeisse à mes destinées, & que sans craindre l'orage, ny esperer le calme, j'acheve le voyage qu'elles m'ont fait entreprendre. Je scay que cette timi-dité qu'on appelle raison voudroit bien par ses considerations specieuses me faire perdre l'envie, apres m'avoir osté l'espo-rance. Mais ses conseils sont trop lasches pour estre escoutez, & la grande Alcidiane ne seroit pas ce qu'elle est, si la raison ou la fortune se pouvoient opposer à ce qu'elle a resolu.\textsuperscript{42}
\end{quote}

It follows that no threats or conditions, even from Alcidiane, can influence his resolve. When Alcidiane proclaims that Polexandre will be put to death if he tries to see her, it is simply a statement of what will befall him after he has fulfilled his destiny: whether he lives or dies

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{38} V,1308-9.
\item \textsuperscript{39} cf. II,201.
\item \textsuperscript{40} IV,596, V,1070.
\item \textsuperscript{41} III,6-7.
\item \textsuperscript{42} IV,453.
\end{itemize}
afterwards is immaterial provided he has achieved his goal:

Je cherche Alcidiane, je soupire après elle, & ne souhaitte que le bonheur de sa veuè, encore que ... elle m'ait déclaré criminel, & que par un Arrest irrevoçable, elle vœullle que je sois immolé sur les Autels du Dieu des van­geances.43

Polexandre's destiny as a hero is therefore not to obey the will of Alcidiane, as Cyrus was to see his destiny in obedience to Mandane, but to strive to attain the ideal which she represents without regard to her feelings on the matter. The demands of heroism have an absolute validity. Though the other major characters have more normal relationships than Polexandre, there is a general agreement amongst the men that female values must not be allowed to intrude into the world of heroic energy. The men may be subject to the wishes of their ladies in certain matters but the ladies must accept the supremacy of heroic criteria. When Bajazet, supported by Polexandre and Iphidamante, is besieging the capital of Morocco in order to recover a portrait of Cydarie (whom he has with him), the ladies, Almanzaire, Cydarie and Mélicerte, suggest that such an action is excessive, but Bajazet's father rejects their arguments as 'des preuves de la timidité du sexe', and Polexandre and Iphidamante 'n'ayant garde de desapprouver une pensee si conforme aux leurs, conjurèrent Bajazet de ne se pas laisser vaincre aux persuasions des Dames.'44

As a lover rather than as a hero, that is, when con­sidering Alcidiane as a person with whom he has a relation­ship rather than as an ideal he must strive to attain, Polexandre has no will of his own. If ever his mind begins to form the idea that he has any kind of right or claim where Alcidiane is concerned, he suppresses it ruthlessly:

que je suis lâche & perfide, dit-il, de me considerer plustost que l'incomparable beauté pour qui je souffre ! Au lieu de

43. IV,387 ; cf. III,743.
44. IV,246-7.
He is filled with a conviction of his own inadequacy and refuses to believe that he has the slightest prospect of happiness with Alcidiane, even when he is confronted with evidence from reliable observers: 'à peine se fut-il arresté un moment sur un si agréable sujet que le désespoir & l'incredulité luy osterent de l'esprit toutes ces belles idées. Il rentra dans les defiances qu'il avoit toujours euës de soy-mesme.' When the name of Alcidiane is mentioned, he trembles and grows pale.

Gomberville makes it plain that this attitude is peculiar to Polexandre and is caused by his underestimation of himself rather than because it is a necessary element in a heroic love relationship. The other characters do not share his attitude, limiting themselves to a sufficient degree of modesty and deference, and disinterested persons point out to him that he is doing himself an injustice by treating himself as so unworthy: 'vostre esprit ne cessera jamais d'estre ingenieux à vous persecuter,' says the faithful Dicée. 'Il doute eternellement de la verité des biens qui vous arrivent ; & les seules apparences du mal passent aupres de luy pour de tres-certaines realitez.' There is even the suggestion that Polexandre's reactions

45. V, 784-5.
46. V, 976.
47. III, 210 ; cf. V, 1260-1.
48. I, 569.
49. V, 1205.
are somewhat ridiculous. When a meeting is finally arranged between Alcidiane and Polexandre, he trembles so much that he loses control of his limbs and can only stumble down the stairs leading to her chamber. Amynthe, the confidente, chokes with laughter and asks him if he knows where he is. 'Comment le sc. aurois-je ? luy respondit serieusement ce Prince, si mesme je ne sc.ay pas ce que je suis.'

This is in keeping with a certain ironic detachment on Gomberville's part which manifests itself at times. He suggests that lovers are incapable of seeing their situation clearly: they exaggerate the beauty and qualities of the one they love, and he does not always make it plain whether the view of a character he is giving is his own objective view or that of an infatuated lover. It is an ambivalence which applies to Alcidiane: the reality is different from Polexandre's idealised view of her. Far from being an allegorical abstraction, she is an individual with complex emotions, though the extent of their complexity does not emerge until Volume V, since for most of the novel she remains at a distance, issuing edicts for others to obey.

All that she feels revolves around an overriding need for emotional freedom. 'Je suis née libre', she cries when the prospect of having to marry against her will threatens, as though this were enough to cancel out all other obligations, and 'je luy offre ma liberté' is the ultimate statement she can make about her love for Polexandre. Though she is attracted to him, she finds the idea that she might be beholden to him impossible to accept and is led into ungenerous thoughts as a result, imputing the victories he has won on her behalf to a desire on his part to erode 'la liberté de laquelle nous nous vantons.' She is capable of tortuous reasoning in opposition to the evidence: 'je m'imagine encore que les extrêmes humiliitez de Polexandre ne sont point sans orgueil ; & qu'il met toute sa vanité à

51. I, 767, II, 615; cf. II, 3 and an impatient attitude towards lovers on the part of other characters, II, 355-6, 686.
52. V, 1129.
53. V, 1320.
ne la point faire paroistre.

The crime for which Polexandre is forbidden to return to her island is that he had not regarded her 'avec toute la terreur & toute la reverence que l'on doit avoir pour les choses saintes.'

By the final stage of the novel, when Polexandre is presumed dead, her feelings have clarified sufficiently to allow her to acknowledge that she had loved him; a dream in which the wounded Polexandre calls to her for help reveals the truth behind her pride: 'en cette extremité mon affection m'a fait oublier ce que j'estois.' As soon as she suspects that she is being manipulated or tricked, however, her pride reasserts itself and she angrily assumes that Polexandre merely wishes to boast how he had made her fall in love with him.

The basis for this sensitivity and fear of humiliation is a belief that love is a weakness which leads to complete subjection to the will of another. Being a queen, Alcidiane has to maintain her moral status, and there is ample evidence in Polexandre of the disasters which can ensue when love is allowed to rule the reason. Her resistance to love and marriage arises from a fear of derogating from her supreme position, and her submission to Polexandre at the end of the novel is an acknowledgement that the passivity associated with woman must give way to the active values of heroism, to a man, as she tells her people, 'qui par la merveille de ses actions a merité d'estre vostre Maistre & le mien.'

The sévérité of Alcidiane, though eventually overcome, adumbrates the attitudes characteristic of préciosité some years later and Adam was no doubt correct in describing her as 'la première en date des précieuses,' but it should be remembered that Gomberville does not concern himself with the kind of intellectual analysis of love which was to be such an important feature of Clélie; still less does he reduce love to the level of a society game. He constantly

54. I,903; see I,845-959 for an analysis of Alcidiane's response to her emergent feelings of love.

55. I,571-2.

56. V,1155.

57. V,1272.

58. V,1320. It should be noted that, almost alone amongst the heroines of heroic novels, Alcidiane has no filial obligations.

stresses the fact that love is a force which can swamp all the other faculties and pervert normal moral and social standards. It brings disaster and death in some cases to ordinary people. In this respect, Gomberville is closer to Racine than to the précieuses.

From a technical point of view, the relationship between Polexandre and Alcidiane represents an important innovation in that the tension between the lovers has become the main source of the impetus of the plot, giving it a self-contained momentum, rather as one spring in a clock works against another. Though l'Astrée had depended to a certain extent on a similar tension between hero and heroine, the majority of seventeenth-century novels before Polexandre had depicted hero and heroine reacting together against the external and unpredictable onslaughts of fate. Gomberville showed that the interplay of psychological forces arising from the nature of love offered a much richer basis for the construction of a novel and his lead was to be followed by most of the writers of heroic novels.

For Gomberville, heroism is a destiny visited upon certain individuals, comparable in some ways with the religious concept of grace. It is not a destiny which can be chosen or created by the individual himself, however great his will-power. It makes the recipient aware of an ideal which he then exerts himself to the utmost to attain: his devotion to the ideal becomes the sole purpose of his life and takes precedence over other responsibilities, such as the duties of kingship. Though he is normally a king or prince, his position does not bring any privileges which he has not deserved by his own merits.

The life he leads is one of action. Since he belongs to the small group of men who can stand up to fortune, he
has an obligation to alleviate the misfortunes of others, an obligation which he accepts naturally and completely. Others look to him for help, aware that he can bring qualities to bear which are outside their capacity. The standards of générosité according to which he conducts his life are not the same as those of ordinary honnêteté which operate in the society of lesser mortals, but represent a higher concept of behaviour which can only be admired by the majority.

His destiny is not simply one of self-fulfilment, as it was to be for the heroes in Cassandre. Sometimes it brings him into situations which are the very opposite of jouissance. He is not concerned with the acquisition of gloire, though his actions bring him immense fame. As he helps his fellows, so he rises above them. He responds to imperatives applicable only to supermen and follows a path through life which leads him morally away from the rest of mankind. The more heroic he proves himself to be, the more isolated he becomes from his fellow beings, even those who can claim to share some of his aspirations: 'le héros devient une sorte de statue, un monument que tout le monde peut visiter et qui doit éblouir tout le monde.'

By his clear depiction of a superior kind of human being devoted to furthering the good of mankind, Gomberville has a strong claim to be considered the founder of the heroic novel. There has been a tendency amongst modern literary historians, however, to place Polexandre outside the heroic novel proper because its author did not subscribe to the theory that the novel was a prose epic with fixed rules as to its construction and subject-matter. In fact, Gomberville concerned himself a good deal with history. He had written

60. Kévorkian, 'Le Héros dans l'oeuvre romanesque de Gomberville : Polexandre et Araxez', Héroïsme et création littéraire ..., p. 247. See also Kévorkian, Le Thème de l'amour ..., Part II, Chapter I.

61. Magendie and Coulet list Polexandre as a "transitional" work (see above, p. 12); Adam (L'Age classique, pp. 145-6) classifies it as a roman d'aventures précéding the roman héroïque of La Calprenède and Scudéry. Cf. Kerviler (Marin Le Roy, sieur de Gomberville, Paris, 1876, p. 14) who acclaims Gomberville as the founder of the roman chevaleresque, later developed by La Calprenède and Scudéry.
and Polexandre is firmly set in a period he knew well, the late fifteenth century: references in the text to Vasco da Gama's return from India, Boabdil's withdrawal from Granada, the reigns of Louis XII and Henry VII of England, etc. enable the events of the novel to be dated between 1492 and 1499. There is also a certain concern for verisimilitude in matters involving the differences between nations. Several languages have to be tried on strangers to find out which one they know and new languages have to be learnt. Arriving in Denmark, Polexandre is careful to land away from big towns and takes precautions to dress in the local style so that he is not noticed.

These are minor elements, however, in a work which derives its impact primarily from its imaginative scope. Certainly, Gomberville had no time for theories about the structure of the novel. He admitted that he lacked the patience to organise his work properly: 'l'irregularité de mon esprit ne peut souffrir ces importunes & perpetuelles justesses. Il se plaist en la confusion. Il aime les déreiglemens.' But his achievement was to create a truly heroic figure whose exploits and fame covered the whole world and who could embody the highest aspirations of mankind. Questions of form and construction only became of any real importance after the publication in 1641 of Ibrahim, in which Scudéry demonstrated how the heroic novel could be put into a more realistic framework. It is equally significant, however, that within the new framework, Scudéry offered an alternative definition of heroism to that embodied in Polexandre.

---

62. III,268; IV,237; III,924; II,870 et seq.
63. II,769-70. Technical terms are sometimes used to give an air of verisimilitude, cf. II,977.
64. V,1327.
CHAPTER IX

Ibrahim

The preface to Ibrahim makes it plain that its author does not consider the novel to have made any progress since l'Astrée. There is evidently a general lack of awareness of the nature and purpose of the novel: reform is necessary, to be carried out by the formulation and application of the rules of the genre, 'qui par des moyens infaillibles meinent à la fin que l'on se propose.' The rules according to which the successful novelist should operate can, he claims, be deduced from the Greek romances: for instance, they limited the plot to one central theme to which all the episodes were attached, they began their story in medias res and obeyed a unity of time of one year. The most important rule, according to Scudéry, is that of verisimilitude, without which the novel is merely grotesque: 'cette fauceté grossiere ne fait aucune impression en l'ame & ne donne aucun plaisir.' To ensure truth to life in his own novel, Scudéry has provided details of the religion, customs and laws of the nations of which he treats; his chief characters are historical; he has limited the number of shipwrecks to which they are subjected.  

Verisimilitude, however, means much more than just local colour. It involves the way in which the author approaches his hero (and as a result, the concept of heroism).

---


2. Scudéry's claim to have taken so much care over realistic details left him all the more vulnerable to ridicule when he made one of his characters sail from the Black Sea into the Caspian (see Guéret, *Le Parnasse reformé*, pp. 128-9; Sorel, *De la connoissance des bons livres*, p. 105). Scudéry seems to have thought that the River Arax connected the two seas (*Ibrahim*, I, 902).
Nothing is more important, Scudéry declares, than to impress strongly upon the reader the idea or the image of heroes, 'mais en façon qu'ils soient comme de sa connoissance', for this is what interests the reader in their adventures. Unlike those authors who described superhuman activities and left the reader to assume that they derived from a superhuman mentality, Scudéry wants to analyse the workings of the hero's mind. Heroism lies not in the action but in the motivation and the reasoning behind it and unless the reader is shown what these are, how is he to know that fortune has not contributed as much as the hero, that his valour is not 'une valeur brutale', and that he has suffered his misfortunes as an honnête homme? : 'ce n'est point par les choses de dehors ; ce n'est point par les caprices du destin, que je veux juger de luy ; ce n'est par les mouvemens de son ame, & par les choses qu'il dit.'

Such an approach was a step forward in the theory of the novel but in practice its effect was to reduce the scale of the hero and bring him much closer to the everyday world of the 1640s. The world of heroism in Ibrahim is not a miraculous region inhabited by exceptional people, but an extension of ordinary experience, only just beyond the reach of the educated and imaginative reader who would have found himself introduced into a world in which he could almost feel at home, in which the social norms were the same as his own though adhered to more punctiliously. The picture of a leisured class moving in surroundings of great opulence is held out to tempt the dreams of Parisian aristocratic and bourgeois society. When an important scene is to take place, the setting is carefully described with particular reference to furnishings, clothes, jewellery, etc.; details of fashion are introduced, no doubt with the aim of allowing the female reader to compare them with those of her own day. Even when the Turkish army is drawn up for battle, there is a description of the materials of which their tents are made, together with
the decorations and patterns of colours.\(^3\) The degree of opulence is urged upon the reader as something which he is expected to be able to appreciate, if only in financial terms: on one occasion, when a basket of precious stones is described as being 'd'une valeur si excessive, qu'il y avait à huit cens mille francs de perles',\(^4\) the mention of their specific value is presumably meant to be the ultimate means of impressing the reader. There is, indeed, in *Ibrahim* an awareness of the importance of money not found in any other heroic novel.\(^5\)

The concern for this kind of *vraisemblance* is based on a belief that the reader will be of a particular type and will have certain tastes. It is assumed that he will be interested in long accounts of the history of Turkey and in descriptions of palaces (though those who are not interested in architecture and 'ces belles choses, pour lesquelles j'ay tant de passion' are invited to ignore the description of Ibrahim's palace\(^6\)). He is encouraged to believe that *Ibrahim* represents a new departure in the concept of the novel in that it derives directly from history and in fact provides information unknown to the historians.\(^7\) Other novelists are mocked for their naïveté in endowing their heroes with prodigious memories.\(^8\)

The characters who inhabit this world reinforce the impression that it is only slightly removed from the polite society known to the reader. The tone is set by a group of friends of the hero and heroine, the cream of Genoese society: they sympathise with Justinian and Isabelle, sometimes act as a chorus, discussing whether they have acted correctly or not,\(^9\) but mainly spend their time in conver-

---

3. IV, Book VIII, 478-80.
4. III, 681.
7. The death of Ibrahim recounted by the historian Paul Jove was, it is claimed, a false report put out by the Sultan to cover Justinian's departure. The true story was contained in an account written by a 'Caloyer grec' who had heard it from Justinian and Isabelle themselves (IV, Book X, 176). It should be noted that *l'Histoire nègrepontique* was supposedly based on an account by 'un Caloyer grec'.
8. II, 210-11.
9. e.g. II, 640-43.
sation and badinage. Serious topics are specifically excluded from the gatherings of 'cette belle Troupe, qui n'avait autre pensée, que celle de se divertir':

*il estoit defendu de parler en ces occasions, ny de la guerre, ny des affaires generales : ... les Vers, la Peinture, la Musique, l'Amour, la Vertu, & toutes les choses qui dependent du bel esprit, estoient les seules dont on pouvoit s'entretenir.*

Whole sections of the novel are given over to their discussions on the lighter aspects of love and they take their rather trivial preoccupations with them wherever they go. When they are caught in a storm and become the slaves of the Moroccan royal family, they soon transfer the same salon atmosphere to the Moroccan court and establish the principles of galanterie there; a month or so later, they are to be found in the seraglio in Constantinople, still behaving as though they had never left Genoa.

The men of the group are portrayed in such a way that their courage and générosité are taken for granted but are felt to be of less importance than their skill in conversation, their wit and ability to turn a compliment. The social virtues are given more prominence than the martial ones and are what makes a man admirable. The comte de Lavagne, ambitious and active enough to organise a coup d'état in Genoa, is described in terms which call to mind Faret's *honnête homme*:

*Sa beauté, sa bonne mine, sa conversation, sa complaisance, son humeur guaye & enjouée, l'adresse qu'il avoit à danser, à jouer du Luth, à chanter, à monter à cheval, & à toutes les choses qui peuvent donner quelque agrément, le rendoient incomparable.*

---

10. II, 517.
11. II, 521-2.
12. Vol. IV.
The Marquis français, who had left France for reasons which sufficiently indicate his courage and self-reliance, is greatly in demand, but it is because of his carefree attitude rather than any heroic qualities; in the episodes devoted to him, the only attribute which emerges is his skill in handling a complicated situation and turning it to his advantage.\textsuperscript{14}

The hero and heroine, Justinian and Isabelle, are fully integrated members of this group. Though each of them is descended from illustrious ancestors (Justinian from the line of the Palaeologues and Isabelle from the Princes of Monaco), they are for practical purposes members of the Genoese nobility. Justinian is a typical product of that society with the normal accomplishments expected of a young nobleman, but he had not shown any signs of being egregious by the time he left his home town. He sets off on his travels, not in answer to an irrepressible urge for greatness but, like Mélinde in \textit{Ariane}, because of 'l'\textit{extreme envie que j'avois tousjours euë, d'aller admirer les pompeuses ruines de l'ancienne Rome, & les grandeurs de la nouvelle.'\textsuperscript{15} He learns the art of war as a profession rather than accepting it as a destiny.\textsuperscript{16} His skill in fighting is considerable but he is by no means invincible.\textsuperscript{17}

It is after he has been sold as a slave in Turkey that his heroic qualities really begin to reveal themselves. The initial impetus is provided by his despair at having, as he thinks, lost Isabelle, but there is obviously also an underlying urge to achieve some kind of distinction, even if the outcome is death. The combination of sorrow at finding himself 'dans une oysiveté honteuse'\textsuperscript{18} and the desire to seek some way of dying nobly makes Ibrahim transcend his forced

\textsuperscript{14.} The \textit{Bibliothèque universelle des romans} considered the Marquis français' story ('Le Feint Astrologue', II,146-324) to be so different in tone from the rest of the novel that they printed it as a separate nouvelle, suggesting that Scudéry wrote it to prove that he could excel in more than one genre (Jan. 1777, II,120).

\textsuperscript{15.} I,144.
\textsuperscript{16.} I,145-6.
\textsuperscript{17.} I,303, IV,Book X,74-5.
\textsuperscript{18.} I,733.
rôle as a foot-soldier and take on that of an inspired leader in the capture of a town. This is the beginning of his success: the Sultan treats him 'comme si j'eusse esté cent degrez au dessus de luy, & par ma naissance, & par mon merite, & par ma valeur' 19, and makes him Grand Vizir. In subsequent wars, his heroic status is accepted without question but it is in keeping with the tone of the novel that relatively little space is devoted to accounts of his skill and courage, equal importance being attached to his political acumen in the preliminaries and aftermath of war. 20 Indeed, the reader in 1641 might well have imagined Ibrahim to be an oriental version of Richelieu when told that 'c'estoit luy qui commandoit les armées ; c'estoit luy qui faisoit les Sangiacs & qui leur donnoit les gouvernemens des Provinces. C'estoit luy qui presidoit au conseil d'Estat, & qui seul en formoit la resolution, dans le cabinet du Sultan. Enfin Ibrahim estoit si puissant, qu'il ne luy manquoit que le seul nom d'Empereur, pour estre le premier de tout l'Orient.' 21 With his sober manner, he lacks the panache of Polexandre or Oroondate and gives the impression that the gloire he has achieved is somewhat accidental, the product of circumstances rather than his own élan.

Nor does the nature of Ibrahim's position lend itself to the level of glory associated with these rival heroes. He has been raised to the eminence he occupies because he has gained the favour of a mighty ruler. He had not aspired to any level of eminence at all and fulfils his functions merely because it is required of him, though he is extremely gifted as a minister. However favoured he may be, he is always subordinate to the Sultan, however, a man whom he believes to be 'un des meilleurs Princes du monde' but who has no claims to being classed as heroic, for he is capable of great cruelty and on several occasions allows himself to

be dominated by passions which bring out all his latent injustice and self-interest. Despite his emotional dependence on Ibrahim and his professed inability to live without him, he is prepared to betray his friend by taking Isabelle from him and installing her in his harem, and ultimately by planning to kill him. This is the man at whose feet Ibrahim throws himself, 'pour qui il sacrifieroit sa vie avec joie; qui regnoit dans son coeur, bien plus absolument que sur ses peuples.'

Ibrahim's attitude towards the Sultan is a mixture of genuine respect, devotion and a measure of caution and fear. His will has of necessity to take account of the sultan's wishes and the immediate responses characteristic of most heroes have to be tempered to fit the circumstances. Though the Sultan had made it possible for him to remain a Christian in private while appearing as a Muslim in public, the privilege could not be taken too far. When the Sultan had sent a series of paintings to help furnish his palace, including some showing Turkish victories over the Christians, Ibrahim had been troubled in his conscience but 'enfin il n'avoir osé ne les y pas mettre.' When he is considering whether to abandon Isabelle and return to Constantinople as he had promised, it is not only honour which weighs in his decision but the possibility that the Sultan might come with an army and lay waste his country. At the end of the novel, when it is apparent that the Sultan is a complete slave to his passion for Isabelle, Ibrahim can only resort to flight together with Isabelle and her friends and, when that expedient fails, he is powerless before the Sultan's rage: he has no chance to take the initiative and must face death with as much fortitude as possible. It is in fact only a change of heart on the part of the Sultan that saves the situation.

22. I,538.
24. II,471.
It is evident that Ibrahim is not the kind of hero portrayed in novels such as *Cassandre*, *Scanderberg* or *Alcide*. He is prepared to lead an existence in which his moral freedom is at times severely restricted: he does not strive to surpass his fellow-men in physical prowess or constantly measure his status against that of rivals. Similarly, the love-relationship he has with Isabelle has no superhuman side to it. It is comparable with those depicted in the Greek romances and their French derivatives: once the couple have established that their love is mutual, there is a bond of affection and unselfishness between them which strikes the modern reader as more normal than the abject self-abasement of Polexandre or the gloire-centred emotions in *Cassandre*.

The element of pride and tension between them is almost entirely lacking. For the sake of the plot, it is necessary that Justinian should believe that Isabelle has been obliged to marry a foreign prince so that he goes away in despair, accepts slavery and exposes himself recklessly to death in battle, but there are never any recriminations between them. Isabelle is not a semi-divine creature like Alcidiane but very much a woman of flesh and blood. She is described in detail (hair, complexion, eyes, teeth, etc.)\(^{25}\) in such a way that female readers could imagine and appreciate her perfectly in terms of their own world, just as she fits in with the world of Genoese society.

The love she feels for Justinian is one in which she makes no secret of her commitment to him. He means more to her than her principality and possessions, or even her freedom:

> Je puis ... vivre malheureuse, infortunée, chargée de chaînes, exilée de mon pays, sans biens & sans liberté : mais je ne puis vivre sans honneur & sans Justinian.\(^{26}\)

---

25. I, 179-82.
She is overjoyed to be with him in Constantinople despite the threat to her honour and retains no pride where he is concerned:

Aprenez-moy donc ce que je dois attendre de ma fortune ; avec promesse, s'il est vray que je n'aye plus de part en vostre souvenir, de ne murmurer plus de mon malheur ; d'accuser mes deffauts de vostre changement ; & ne pouvant vivre pour vous, de n'estre jamais à personne, et de mourir dans un Cloistre.27

He is similarly ready to sacrifice all his hopes of happiness if it is necessary for her sake. Such emotions are intended by the author to be readily accessible to the reader, who is invited on occasion to call on his own experience to provide confirmation of their force. The reader, it is implied, shares a heightened sensibility with the hero and heroine and, if he had the misfortune to be treated in the same way as them, would suffer the same reactions.

+ + + + + + +

Ibrahim is not a heroic novel if by that is meant an account of the exploits of a quasi-divine figure fulfilling or achieving his destiny as a ruler in the face of constant threats and dangers. By virtue of its general conception, the areas which lend themselves to such an interpretation are limited. The circumstances in which Justinian is required to act out his life, the nature of the supporting characters, the type of relationship he enjoys with Isabelle, all tend to pull him back into the ordinary world rather than thrust him up into the rarefied atmosphere inhabited by demi-gods. Ibrahim is nonetheless a heroic novel in that it presents a picture of a man closer to perfection than the majority of mankind, but it contains an alternative concept of heroism to that based on 'les choses de dehors' and 'les caprices du destin.'

27. I,368 ; cf. I,213, 253, but note IV,Book VIII,411 : 'je cesserois d'aimer Ibrahim, s'il cessoit d'estre geneureux.'
Instead of identifying the will as the instrument whereby the individual can impose himself on circumstances and on other men to achieve *gloire*, Scudéry sees the will (or the reason, since the two are identical) as the means whereby internal control can be exercised over the passions and the energy associated with them properly directed. *Gloire* may be the result, but only as a by-product: self-advancement is not an aim but a possible benefit. The fact that Ibrahim is politically subservient to the Sultan is thus no reflection on his true worth. He is in fact morally greater than the Sultan because he orders his passions better.\(^{28}\) He is aware of the supremacy of the will and always applies it in the cause of virtue. When the Marquis français, the apologist of inconstancy, argues that the individual is strongly influenced by his temperament which in its turn is dependent on his humours, to the point where it is almost impossible to establish 'la veritable raison de toutes choses', Justinian is moved to counter that it is only our inclinations which are affected by the stars or by our humours and that reason can correct them all. Animals can only follow their instinct, 'mais pour l'homme, il n'en est pas ainsi : il est maistre absolu de ses sentimens & de ses actions ; rien ne le force, rien ne le violente'; suicide provides proof of the supremacy of the will since man's natural impulse is to live.\(^{29}\)

Such a view calls to mind the theories of Descartes. Ibrahim postulates the same relationship between reason and the passions as Descartes when he urges that all men are capable of controlling their passions if they take the

---

28. Lucien Braun ('Polysémie du concept de héros', *Héroïsme et création littéraire* ..., p. 22) asserts that the heroic universe must exist outside the framework of ordinary life - 'il n'y a pas de passage du normal à l'héroïque. Le héros se pose en rupture' - and the great heroic traditions to which he refers support such a view. The institutional head, the king (and still less the minister) are not heroic simply by virtue of their functions and it is indicative of how radically Scudéry diverged from the heroic tradition that he could largely ignore the externals of heroism and concentrate almost exclusively on moral superiority.

29. II, 126-37.
trouble to learn to direct their inclinations. Successful control brings freedom from the tyranny of the passions and enables the individual to fulfil his potential. The outcome of such liberation in Ibrahim, however, is not the aristocratic urge to gloire, 'l'orgueil qui se donne en spectacle', as defined by Bénichou, but internal fulfilment aiming at much less spectacular results such as contentment and a happy marriage. The jouissance at which Justinian aims is modest, the maintenance of certain standards representing perhaps less aristocratic values: 'comme il n'avait pas tant d'ambition que de désir d'estre aimé, l'Empire de toute la terre n'auroit pu luy donner une joie aussi sensible que celuy du coeur d'Isabelle.' Those characters on the other hand who pursue jouissance at the expense of others are shown to be inferior and in many cases come to grief.

The Sultan is described as having only ever been overcome by one passion, but that the noblest of all, i.e. love or rather his weakness for women. He falls in love with Axiamire simply through seeing her portrait and is soon consumed by a feeling against which his reason is powerless:

\[je suis force à cette inclination par une puissance superieure, qui ne me permet pas de m'opposer à moy-même. Ce n'est pas que je ne connoisse bien encor la raison, mais c'est qu'en cette rencontre je ne la puis suivre.\]

Having fallen in love with Isabelle later on, he conducts a debate with himself, knowing that he should suppress his passion but realising that he is incapable of doing so.

33. e.g. Bajazet (II,676-867), Dilament (III,17-250).
34. I,499-500; cf. III,588.
35. I,783.
36. III,708-12.
Isabelle lectures him on the need to apply his will:

toutes les personnes qui ont l'ame
grande comme ta Hautesse ne peuvent
jamais faire de fautes que volontaire-
ment. Il n'est rien qui puisse forcer
la raison quand on s'en veut servir :
& les passions les plus violentes ne
sont sans doute que le pretexte des
foibles, lors qu'ils veulent excuser
les mauvaises actions qu'ils font :
estant certain qu'il n'est point
impossible de les surmonter.37

Many of the intercalated episodes deal with the dire effects of uncontrolled passions, in which innocent people are involved. On occasion, reason can reassert itself and rectify the situation, such as when Arsalon is so impressed by the générosité of his daughter and son-in-law that he forgets his desire for revenge, or when the Sultan is filled with remorse at the (false) news that Axiamire has been killed as the result of his attempt to have her abducted.38 In other cases, there is no such happy solution, as when Soliman's sons, Mustapha and Giangir, both die as a result of the hatred and jealousy of the Sultan's wife, Roxelane.39

What emerges is a clear division between those who can control their passions and thus liberate their natural générosité and those who are incapable of rising above their irrational impulses. Fortunately, the Sultan's reason manages to reassert itself at the crucial moment at the end of the novel because he is inherently virtuous and can call on reserves of moral strength:

ceux qui ont les inclinations vertueuses
& qui ne sont meschans que par une violente
passion, ou par les conseils d'autruy, n'ont
besoin que d'un moment pour se porter au
bien. Leur raison n'est pas si tost esclairée
qu'ils trouvent un puissant secours en eux-
mesmes.40

Moral strength is the essence of heroism in Scudéry's view rather than courage or pride and when it manifests

37. IV, Book VIII, 395.
38. IV, Book IX, 526-606, I, 858-917.
40. IV, Book X, 144-5.
itself in suitably impressive circumstances it marks the individual out as admirable, but this sort of heroism is not an aureole of grandeur available only to a tiny few, condemned to live almost beyond the comprehension of other men. The heroism shown in Ibrahim leads not to solitude but to a greater solidarity with the rest of mankind. It thus aligns itself with the Cartesian definition of générosité as the firm and constant resolution to use the will to do what is right. Scudéry's hero and heroine live out the precepts to be formulated by Descartes:

les plus généreux ont coutume d'être les plus humbles.

pour ce qu'ils n'estiment rien de plus grand que de faire du bien aux autres hommes et de mépriser son propre intérêt, pour ce sujet ils sont toujours parfaite-
ment courtois, affables et officieux envers un chacun. Et avec cela ils sont entièrement maîtres de leurs passions.41

They lack the self-interest which formed the character-base of so many contemporary heroes. The virtues for which Justinian is praised are devoid of pride: 'un air haut sans estre superbe, une galanterie sans affectation, une propreté negligée, une franchise sans artifice, une civilité sans contrainte.'42 They are social virtues, associated with the heroism of universality rather than the heroism of singularity found, for example, in Cassandre.43

What is under consideration here is effectively a refined version of the honnêteté which was establishing itself as the social ideal in Parisian society, an extension of the social norms which the reader might be expected to obey. By implication, any person of sensitivity with a sufficient level of générosité and moral strength might well be able to gain heroic status given propitious circumstances and a willingness to exercise the will-power

41. Les Passions de l'âme, Art. 155, 156.
42. IV,Book X,15.
43. The distinction is borrowed from Doubrovsky (Corneille et la dialectique du héros, pp. 67-8) who contrasts the universality in Descartes with the singularity in Corneille.
necessary to break out of the restrictions of ordinary life. A world in which such things happen is being held out to the reader for him to grasp: the prerequisites for heroism are present all around him and within him.

It is for that reason that the links between the world of Justinian and Isabelle and that of Paris in 1641 are so strong. Corneille's criticism of Racine's Bajazet, that the characters 'ont tous, sous un habit turc, le sentiment qu'on a au milieu de la France', might well have been taken as a compliment if it had been applied to Ibrahim, since the honnêteté and galanterie depicted by Scudéry are shown to be not simply ephemeral French fashions but modes of behaviour dictated by reason and therefore found universally wherever reason is allowed to fulfil its proper function. Scudéry's idea of heroism, unlike Gomberville's, is based on optimism about the human condition and the power of social virtues to produce a better world.

44. They nonetheless manifest themselves at their best in France. The Marquis français is lionised by Genoese society because he teaches them the precepts of French galanterie.
CHAPTER X

Cassandre

If Ibrahim brings heroism into the everyday world, Cassandre sets out to take the reader right away into a world he could never know. Not only is the action set around Babylon in the time of Alexander the Great, but the characters are almost without exception royal and concern themselves solely with the noble pursuits of love and war. There is much stress on the heroes' physical strength and dexterity, particularly in and after Volume V, at the beginning of which La Calprenède declares that he is moving away from the style of Plutarch, Curtius and Justinus, the sources of his story, and adopting the manner of Homer, Virgil and Tasso; the narrative will concentrate on the actions and reputations of the heroes themselves rather than on the fate of the nations with whom they are connected.

The influence of the romances of chivalry can be felt in the descriptions of battles in which men are cut in half with a single blow and arms raised to strike are lopped off. The same clichés occur, with blows on the head so strong that the recipient 'crût estre accabalé des ruines d'une tour' or is made to 'baisser la teste jusques sur l'arçon de la selle.' The heroes themselves, however, belong to a special caste of superhuman beings who have nothing in common with ordinary mortals, very different from the heroes of the


2. VI, 835, 7033-5, VIII, 187, 189.

3. IV, 718, V, 535-6. La Calprenède creates his own clichés, such as the crossing of the hands on the stomach at moments of stress: cf. III, 192, 378, IV, 681, V, 205, VI, 926. (A special mention is made of this cliché by La Mothe le Vayer fils, Le Parasite Mormon, histoire comique, s.l., 1650, p. 67). Nonetheless, despite the clichés, the accounts of battles and sieges in Cassandre have a greater feeling of movement and action than those in any other heroic novel. The narrator's point of reference changes frequently from one part of the battlefield to another, giving the impression of surging armies: cf. II, 211-21; VI, 791-840; VIII, 154-208; IX, 271-301.
earlier romances. They feel drawn to each other regardless of the interests they might supposedly be representing and change sides freely if they think their status as généreux and free men is in any way threatened. Politics in the broadest sense is anathema to them. They are concerned primarily with action supporting their own interests and have no time for questions of national profit. The whole of Alexander's conquest of Asia as well as the opposition to him is depicted as the search by a group of individuals for greater and greater glory.

The essence of the heroic code in Cassandre lies in being true to oneself. Duty is an aspect of self-interest: the only responsibility acknowledged is that of ensuring that the external image corresponds to the ideal of personal greatness. At an early age, the hero senses that his destiny is to lead him beyond the prescriptions of the morality he can learn from other men. From then on, he is aware in an almost mystical way of the ideal to which he must be true, and each one of his actions is referred to it, either consciously or unconsciously.

The case of Oroondate, the main character in the novel, is illustrative. He leads the Scythian army on behalf of his father the king against the Persians and during the battle has occasion to rescue the women of the Persian royal family from being captured by his own soldiers. He falls in love with the Persian princess, Statira, and abandons his own army to stay at the Persian court under an assumed name. Having rescued a knight, with whom he feels an instant affinity, from a group of Scythian soldiers, he discovers that it is Artaxerxe, Statira's brother, and becomes his dearest friend, so that when a second battle between the Scythians and Persians takes place, Oroondate's filial and patriotic duty gives way to love and friendship:

Je n'apprehenderay point d'estre fils desnature pour estre loyal Amant & amy irreprochable, ny ne feray conscience de combattre contre un Pere qui vient renverser la fortune que mon amy m'a establie.4

4. I,206.
Artaxerxe is naturally somewhat reluctant to kill the fellow-countrymen of his friend and holds back in the battle, but Oroondate throws himself into the thick of the fight, slaughtering the Scythians in order to oblige Artaxerxe to fight with and for him.5

Oroondate subsequently makes his way back to Scythia and presents himself at court. His reaction when his father, outraged that his son should have fought against his own country, orders him to be thrown into prison, is one of injured pride which seemingly meets with the approval of the author:

mon Prince se leva de devant luy, & croyant avoir satisfaict à ce qu'il devoit à son Pere, il luy scut si mauvais gré d'un accueil si inhumain apres une absence si longue, qu'il ne daigna luy dire une seule parole pour sa justification.6

After two years, the king relents and asks Oroondate to lead an army against Zopirion, one of Alexander's lieutenants. Oroondate agrees, not from any desire to atone for his earlier actions but because he is moved by a 'desir de gloire' and 'l'amour des belles actions.'7 Having defeated Zopirion, he again abandons his army to go off to Persia and this time does not return until he has himself become king. Hearing at one stage that his father has attempted to kill Artaxerxe, he disowns him, crying out, 'ah tigre inhumain, je te desavoué, ... je tiens ma naissance plus honteuse que si je la tenois du plus bas de tous les hommes.'8

Oroondate's attitude, though presented in greater detail, is shared by the other heroic individuals in the novel. They insist on retaining their liberty of action at all costs, and obligations accepted as binding by lesser mortals, such as patriotism, are strictly subordinated to the expression of personal aspirations.9 The loss of freedom on a physical

5. 1,232-3.
6. II,185.
7. II,207.
8. VIII,36.
9. The secondary hero, Artaxerxe/Arsace, is however more aware of his filial responsibilities than Oroondate: see VII,374-5.
level is more hateful than death, but captivity, if unavoidable, can never affect the spirit. Oroondate, finding himself isolated in an attack on Babylon, almost despairs at the prospect of being taken prisoner, but faced with his enemy he declares: 'Je suis prisonnier ... mais cette captivite du corps ne s'estend point jusqu'\'a l'ame.' After being arrested, Lisimachus tells his friends: 'C'est aux ames lasches à craindre en esclaves, je suis né libre & Prince, & je ne feray jamais de lascheté qui vous fasse rougir pour moy, ny qui me rende indigne de la gloire de mes Ancestres.'

The desire for liberty prompts an energetic response to threats and oppression, the expression of a positive approach to life very different from the passivity displayed by the heroes of the Greek romances. Confronted by danger, La Calprenède's heroes will always strike out in their own defence and never entertain the possibility of being killed except as an expression of their moral freedom. When Arsace is sent poison and a dagger and told to choose his own method of dying, he chooses the dagger but uses it to stab his guards and escape, a striking contrast to Ibrahim in a similar situation waiting for the Sultan's mutes to come and strangle him. However shattering the blows which fate has dealt out to them, these heroes always retain enough fighting spirit to want to hit back; however welcome death may seem, it can always be delayed sufficiently to make one final mark on the world.

The hero's relationships with other people are governed by the code of générosité. It manifests itself externally in the form of actions which appear to indicate that the hero is not vindictive, vengeful or cowardly but can moderate his desire for success or even postpone the fulfilment of his aims by showing mercy or doing favours for enemies. In reality, the motivation behind these acts is not altruistic: générosité is another aspect of the self-centred principle on which all

13. VIII, 40-41.
the major characters operate. It ensures that onlookers provide the degree of admiration and approval necessary to maintain the heroic image at its highest level and, if there are no onlookers present, it confirms the hero's own view of himself. It depends on a carefully graded system of moral assessments in which the amount of moral advantage to be gained from a généreux act has to be weighed against the difference in moral status between the hero and the beneficiary of his act. To be the recipient of générosité has the equivalent effect of lowering the moral status.

Oroondate is brought before Alexander as a prisoner and released by him, and the memory of this act remains with Oroondate for some time as 'le déplaisir qu'il receut de se voir vaincu en générosité.' Conversely, when Arbate, a traitor who has been the cause of most of his misfortunes, is found in the camp and brought before Oroondate, thoughts of revenge enter the hero's mind but he rejects them and tells Arbate to go, not because he wishes to show mercy towards him but because to exercise vengeance on such a man would suggest that there was some moral comparability between them:

Vis, desloyal, luy dit-il, vis, puis que tu es indigne de la mort que je te pourrois donner, & que tu es destiné sans doute à une fin plus honteuse que celle que tu recevrais d'Oroondate.

The way in which revenge is taken is all-important: it must be carried out in accordance with the requirements of gloire, never as an end in itself. Oroondate discovers his mortal enemy, Perdicas, lying wounded but cannot bring himself to dispatch him. He lets him live so that he can be killed in the right way:

je ne luy pardonne point une offense, qui n'est point de nature à esperer de pardon ; mais je difffe sa peine jusques à ce que je la luy puisse donner sans honte & que je puisse mourir sans repentir.

---

16. IX,92.
17. IV,683-4.
It is gloire, too, which requires Arsace to give up his ideas of revenge upon his beloved's father who has greatly wronged him and makes him decide to sacrifice his own life instead: 'il est vray,' he tells himself, 'qu'il faut que tu meures, mais il faut que tu meures comme tu as vescu, & que dans ta mort, tu ne dementes, ny ton amour, ny toutes tes actions passées.'

The essence of générosité in La Calprenède's system of values and its dependence on the ego are made clear by Oroondate after he has rescued Alexander, his rival, from drowning, placed him at the feet of Statira and disappeared again, unrecognised and unrewarded. In reply to Araxe, his astounded confident, who protests that such a deed goes beyond the demands of honour since Alexander could hardly have complained if his worst enemy had not made an effort to save him, he points out that Alexander's feelings have nothing to do with the matter:

Si Alexandre n'avoit point sujet de se plaindre de moy, j'en avois beaucoup moy-mesme, & comme ma satisfaction m'est plus chere que la sienne, le reproche que je me pouvois faire (pour avoir manqué à faire une bonne action ; ou par quelque crainte de peril, ou par quelque consideration d'interest) m'eust esté bien plus sensible que celuy que je pourrois recevoir de luy, de qui je ne pretends, ny de recompenses, ny de remercimens.

Générosité is a self-centred virtue, its main function being to confirm the hero's assessment of himself.

The relationships between heroes and heroines in love involve many of the features mentioned above. The element of pride is strong on both sides and neither partner readily admits dependence on the other. The relationship has to be monitored constantly and pressure applied appropriately if one feels that the other is not responding sufficiently. The resulting union is therefore different from both the utter devotion shown by Polexandre and the calm confidence

experienced most of the time by Ibrahim: it is a stormy affair in which a good deal of the tension is provided by the claims and self-assertion of one or other of the lovers.

The man's approach is relatively simple. He sets out to win his lady by doing service for her and, although he would not claim that in themselves his actions give him any rights, he certainly feels that they entitle him to some consideration and becomes angry if he thinks they are not being sufficiently recognised. He will persist in his pursuit until the woman gives some kind of indication that she is not averse to him and he will then consider himself to have a link with her which cannot be broken without his consent. If he feels he has been wronged by her, her sex will prevent him from taking any form of direct revenge such as treachery on the part of a man would demand, but his pride will remain strong and he is perfectly capable of reviling the woman he loves, calling her 'infidèle,' 'lâche,' 'ingrate' and 'indigne.' Far from seeking to explain the beloved's hostility as something which he must have deserved, as Polexandre would have done, La Calprenède's hero experiences a rush of blood to the head and an urge to strike back. Thus, when Statira is tricked into thinking that Oroondate no longer loves her and rejects him coldly, his first impulse to kill himself quickly gives way to a more aggressive reaction:

venant à considérer l'indignité du traittement qu'il recevoit d'une personne à qui il avoit donné tant & de si belles preuves de son amour, pour qui il avoit fait tant de remarquables actions, & qu'il avoit tant de fois obligée par son salut propre & celuy de tous les siens, il fit succeder le depart à la douleur, & se levant tout à coup aprés l'avoir regardée quelque temps d'un oeil d'amour & d'indignation tout ensemble ; Il est vray, Madame, luy dit-il, que je suis traistre, lasche & desloyal : mais si je le suis, c'est envers mon Pere & mon Roy, envers mes parens & mon pays que j'ay trahis & abandonnez pour vous, & pour les vostres, ... cette lascheté de laquelle vous m'accusez se trouve veritable-

ment en vous & vous feignez que je vous abandonnez dans vos disgraces, pour avoir un pretexte de m'abandonner vous-mesme lors que je vous avois des-ja delivree des mains de cet ennemy que vous me preferez laschement, C'est là la veritable bassesse, ... .22

It is consonant with this attitude that male values are never allowed to be contaminated by female tendencies towards passivity and acceptance. The natural desire is to want to kill any rival who seems to be preferred by the lady; the idea of conceding defeat is unthinkable. The fact that she may have married another man makes no difference to the hero's pursuit of her and he never considers himself bound by the constraints of duty which she may propound.23 Having married Alexander to spite Oroondate and having then discovered that Oroondate was innocent, Statira writes to him regretting what has happened and promising to pray to heaven that he will receive the reward for what he has done for her. Oroondate considers this cold consolation: 'non, non, Statira, ... vous n'en serez pas quitte à ce prix, on ne se defait pas de moy avec cette facilité : & ce n'est pas si legerement qu'on repare des pertes semblables à celles que j'ay faites.'24 Her proposal is that he should live and suffer like her in the hope that the gods will bring about some change in his fortune or in his inclinations; Oroondate's response is to swear to kill Alexander, despite Statira's explicit command to the contrary.25

With this constant drive towards possessing the woman he loves, it is natural that the hero should feel that she is not responding with the same degree of affection and contributing as much to the relationship as he is. He

22. II,140-2 ; cf. IV,699, IX,379.
   All the major female characters except Talestris are in fact widows; see Tallemant des Réaux, Historiettes, ed.cit. II,585 for a possible explanation of why this was so.
25. II,437-8, 457-9. Statira's feelings for Alexander are ambivalent. He had been indirectly responsible for her father's death and she had not loved him when she married him, but after his death her memory of him is full of veneration and love. She decides to lock up all her love in his tomb and reject Oroondate, mainly from a feeling of guilt and duty towards Alexander (V.73-4, 132, 162).
requires constant reassurance and quite frequently reproaches her for her inaction, interpreting it as coldness. Recriminations are never very far below the surface and are used as a weapon in the struggle to establish emotional domination, for La Calprenède's heroes treat love much in the same way as they treat war. Just as a duel may be fought against an honourable opponent, even a friend, for the purpose of establishing who has the greater gloire, so it may be necessary to clarify the moral relationship between two lovers by a sort of verbal duel in which certain statements are made and demanded and a joint position reached which satisfies the honour of both parties. At the darkest moments of the novel, for instance, when Croondate has been captured by Perdicas who already holds Statira prisoner, the two are allowed to meet, for all they know for the last time. Almost the first words uttered by Croondate are reproaches that Statira had not revealed herself when she had found herself in the same house as Croondate who had thought her dead: 'ma presence vous fut si odieuse ...' he complains, 'ma vie si peu chere que vous ne voulustes pas l'asseurer par la simple connoissance de la vostre.' Statira justifies herself by referring to the need to guard her reputation at a time when her husband had only just died; Croondate apologises for having doubted her motives and Statira declares that she loves him sufficiently to prefer him dead rather than unfaithful. The honour of both is satisfied: they have each made a declaration of love while reserving their rights as independent beings.

For the woman, maintaining her freedom is quite as important as for the man, but she has necessarily to use other methods. Unless she is an Amazon like Talestris and can adopt male methods of upholding her gloire, she can only defend her honour and oblige others to accept her will by moral pressure, where a man could use either moral or physical force. Her independence therefore frequently

manifests itself in negative responses, particularly in the form of severity towards her suitors. She is slow to make any sort of declaration to a man who loves her and each step has to be carefully delimited with precise terminology. After several years of service, Lisimachus is overjoyed to receive from Parisatis a few words which scarcely go beyond the terms of ordinary civility. Some time later she concedes 'Je vous estime beaucoup' and again 'j'ay une bienveillance pour vous qui va au delà de l'estime,' but immediately there is a proviso: 'mais je n'ay pas une si forte affection pour vous qu'elle me fasse oublier ce que je me dois à moy mesme & me porte à faire des fautes qui bresseroient ma reputation & offenceroient mortellement le sang illustre d'ou je suis sortie.'

The constant appeals to duty made by these women suggest that they are motivated by filial obedience or submission to the demands of the state, and it is true that they have no means of avoiding such obedience other than by putting themselves to death. There is nonetheless a certain element of personal decision involved. Statira has been under pressure to marry Alexander for some time before she agrees to do so and then it is in order to avenge herself on Oroondate. Moreover, her father Darius had previously made it known that he wished her to marry Oroondate. Parisatis informs Lisimachus that she has married Ephestion because of the gods, her mother, her duty and 'le merite de ses services.' Déidamie has sworn to be true to Agis even though her father has rejected him in favour of another suitor for political reasons.

The duty to which these ladies refer is in fact primarily a duty towards themselves, the same responsibility to ensure the maintenance of their heroic image as is found with the men. Their pride is just as lively: it is only in the courses of action available to their wounded pride that the difference is discernible. When Statira is made

27. III,138.
28. III,147.
29. III,231.
30. After the death of Agis, she is persuaded by the other princesses to marry Démétrius who has attached himself devotedly to her (X,1174).
to believe that Oroondate is unfaithful to her, she falls ill with the shock and comes close to death, but her pride produces an identical reaction to that evinced by Oroondate:

```
Non, je ne mourray point pour luy, j'ay fait assez sans mourir, & ce seroit la ma derniere honte & sa derniere vanite, il en seroit trop glorieux, le traistre, & se vanteroit avec trop d'insolence d'avoir fait mourir d'amour la Princesse de Perse & la fille de l'ennemi de son Pere, je veux plutost vivre pour le hafr & pour le mespriser.31
```

Talestris' response when she discovers how much Oronte has suffered for her sake is to call to mind all the sufferings she has experienced for him.32 Barsine loves and is loved by Memnon but she is also loved by Oxiarte, brother of King Darius, who eventually falls ill because of his passion. Seeing himself as the cause of the impending death of his king's brother, Memnon renounces his claim to Barsine and leaves the court, but Barsine is outraged that he should think that his duty to his king could take precedence over his obligations to her. Only she could release him from his bond and decide the nature of the duties to which he is subject.33

It is important therefore that the terms of a relationship should be as acceptable to the heroine as to the hero, for the mere fact that both desire the relationship is not enough to guarantee her moral independence. Men tend to assume that, since they are the ones who can produce rapid and decisive changes in circumstances by direct physical action, it is their solutions which are the best. Oroondate's sister, Bérénice, speaks for all the other heroic women in Cassandre, however, when she imposes her will on an extraordinary situation. Her father has ordered her to marry Arsacome and she has declared that she will kill herself if she is obliged to do so, in order to remain true to Arsace. Hearing of the projected marriage, Arsace storms the town

31. II,249.
32. IX,323.
33. IX,570-601.
and carries Bérénice off to the safety of his own camp, only to be met by the question: 'Arsace, ... qu'avez-vous fait?' 'J'ai fait,' he replies, 'ce que vous deviez attendre de mon amour ; & je vous ay retirée des bras de cet indigne mari qu'on vous destinoit.' To him, this is self-evident, but Bérénice adds another element which completely alters the situation as far as she is concerned: 'Ouy, reprit Berenice, mais vous m'avez arrachée de ceux de mon pere,' and she asks him to give her back her freedom. Arsace does not understand: she is free and if she thinks otherwise, it must be because her affections have changed and she wishes to be with Arsacome. Bérénice has to explain her standpoint:

Je vous ay promis que j'espouserois la mort plustost qu'Arsacome ; mais je ne vous ay fait esperer, ny par mes discours, ny par mes actions, que je fuyrois des bras de mon pere pour vous suivre, & que je me licencierois en vostre faveur à des actions honteuses & indignes d'une Princesse.'

She had not asked to be rescued and if she is made to marry Arsacome, she will kill herself, a way of escape less cruel than the shame Arsace is offering her. Furious, Arsace can only accede to her demand and returns her into her father's keeping, while she reaffirms her love for him: 'si je prefere mon devoir à vostre satisfaction, à tout autre qu'à vous, je prefereray le tombeau.'

Where Arsace and Bérénice differ is in their interpretation of freedom. Arsace, typically male, assumes that Bérénice wishes to be free of constraints preventing her from being with him and, if his strength can remove the constraints, then she must welcome the new situation he has created. Her female view sees this as morally no different from being forced to marry Arsacome. It is simply a question of one male imposing his will on her rather than another. Freedom for her means imposing her own will and, unless her father releases her from her filial obedience, the only way she has of doing that is by killing herself.

34. VIII, 266-75.
In Cassandre, there is moral equality between male and female because they all value their moral freedom more highly than anything else. Love and marriage can only be entered into if neither partner feels that moral subjection is being demanded of them. While the relationship is developing, the men try to interpret every situation as one which can be solved by direct action; the women see the same situation as subject to the moral forces of which they are possessed. When a union is finally arranged, the interests of both parties have been secured. Oroondate can claim that his marriage to Statira is possible because his courage and fidelity have removed all the obstacles to it; Statira can argue that it is possible because her courage and fidelity are such that she is prepared to risk criticisms of her reputation and suggestions that she is 'légère', to her a threat every bit as serious as a battle is to Oroondate because she has no way of overcoming it.  

This is not to say that all the male or all the female characters are replicas of one another. Oroondate is quicker in his reactions, Lisimachus more self-effacing, Démétrius more susceptible to sudden and violent attacks of passion; Statira is warmer in her declarations, Parisatis more reserved and controlled. The feature they all share is a strong sense of pride, manifesting itself in an overriding concern for gloire. The other heroic qualities are interpreted in terms of it - vertu is strength, either physical or moral, applied in the maintenance of gloire, générosité is the urge to allow pride its free expression. The heroism depicted in Cassandre is totally aristocratic, firstly in the sense that all the characters are from the very highest nobility, if not from long established royal lines, and are keenly aware of their position, but

35. X, 1159.
36. Seillière considers Démétrius to be a weakness in the novel because of his hypersensibility, 'un fâcheux exemple du romanesque outrancier qui nuit aux personnages masculins dans notre roman classique, héritier sur ce point d'une tradition trop despotique pour être parvenu à s'y soustraire' (Le Roman-cier du Grand Condé, Paris, 1921, p. 109). Démétrius does not lack masculine qualities, however, and his emotional sensibility corresponds to a great élan on the battlefield.
more important is the fact that the qualities which make them heroic draw them out of the normal world into an area of moral isolation. They are only capable of communicating with the relatively few individuals who inhabit this same area with them. Being committed to total self-reliance, they make no contribution to the rest of society. Their actions are judged solely in terms of their own advantage and there is never any question of justifying the position they hold: nobility of the sword is acknowledged by all to be the highest order of mankind. What they are justifies what they do. Members of the lower orders are expendable and they accept that a man with sublime vertu is entitled to rule over others without necessarily having any commitment to their welfare. The three major male characters - Croondate, Artaxerxe and Lisimachus - are only potential rulers who do not come into their kingdoms until the end of the novel and could therefore claim not yet to have any responsibility towards their peoples, but, to judge by the rulers we are shown, notably Alexander, the King of Scythia and Darius, kingship is merely a state which provides greater opportunities for the display of gloire (which is why Croondate at one point wishes he already had his father's crown, to face Alexander on equal terms). It imposes no limitations, no duties, no responsibilities.

An aristocratic ethic of this sort presents obvious similarities with Cornelian heroism as defined by several modern scholars: 'l'amour emphatique des grandeurs,' 'le penchant à se célébrer soi-même,' 'l'âme attentive à ne pas se trahir' are all part of the framework of La Calprenède's heroism as of Corneille's, based on a

---

37. The claims of some of the characters to royal descent are tenuous. Alexander's lieutenants have become kings as a result of the break-up of Alexander's empire; Darius had become King of Persia in a coup d'état. At one point, Croondate insists on calling Statira Cassandre, the name she had borne before becoming a princess, because 'avec ce nom de la maison Royale, vous avez quitté tout ce que vous aviez de grand & de noble' (VI, 1052).

38. cf. I, 60-63.

39. cf. V, 56 and the huge numbers slaughtered in battle for purely personal quarrels (VI, 844, IX, 13-14).


41. II, 1-2.


43. Nadal, Le Sentiment de l'amour..., p. 512.
belief that the will can direct the passions in such a way that man can transcend his limitations and achieve sublimity."44 Neither La Calprenède nor any other writer of heroic novels ever suggests, however, that the pursuit of gloire might lead into an area where it could produce an "admirable" crime, such as Corneille depicted in Rodogune and Théodore. If they were aware that the ethic of self-fulfilment contained such an implication, they preferred not to pursue it. La Calprenède's characters exist in a world where good and evil are clearly differentiated and the heroic characters act entirely on the side of good, though the good in question is not altruistic. It consists in being true to the ideal of gloire: virtues such as clemency, justice and magnanimity may benefit others but they are exercised because gloire demands it. The giver receives as much if not more than the recipient.

What La Calprenède offers the reader in Cassandre is an unwavering affirmation of human greatness on the terms specified above. The values recognised as those on which the French noblesse d'épée based their class-myth are approved of, applauded, held up for universal admiration as the only true aspiration for men with noble ideals, and a society which had just seen the first victories of the young duc d'Enghien and was experiencing a resurgence of aristocratic individualism after the death of Richelieu responded with enthusiasm and saw these values as the evocation of their own dreams of grandeur.

44. cf. Morillot, op.cit., p. 70; Coulet, op.cit., I,175. Certain episodes allow close parallels to be drawn, such as Oroondate's sparing of Perdicas' life so that it can be taken at the proper time and in the proper way (Cassandre, IV,683-4) and Cornélie's générosité towards César (La Mort de Pompée, Act IV, Sc. 4).
CHAPTER XI

Cleopatre

The success of Cassandre made it almost inevitable that La Calprenède would write another novel of the same kind. The formula of historical and pseudo-historical characters fired by ambition and love battling their way through to eventual success and happiness was one which could be repeated and extended indefinitely, given the public's willingness to accept plots dependent for their momentum on abductions, misunderstandings caused by traitors and chance encounters between knights. As soon as the last part of Cassandre was published, La Calprenède started work on Cleopatre. In 1646, he received 3000 livres from Sommaville for the manuscripts of Parts II and III, each part to consist of four books of forty or fifty feuillet each. The first volume was published in 1647 (though the achevé d'imprimer is given as April 17th, 1646) and all the major publishers at the Palais were involved with the production of the novel at some stage, suggesting that they anticipated a similar success to that of Cassandre. Moreover, the work was dedicated to the duc d'Enghien, then enjoying considerable esteem for his continuing series of victories over the Spaniards and an obvious model for the hero of a novel.

The first few volumes of Cleopatre indicate that La Calprenède was indeed intending to follow the pattern he had established in Cassandre. The central male characters (Coriolan, son of Juba, King of Mauretania, Césarion, son of Julius Caesar and Cleopatra, and Artaban) are charismatic

1. Martin, Livre, pouvoirs et société ..., I,429.
individuals, able to inspire courage in those who follow them and terror in their enemies. They have a fearsome strength and a remarkable skill in delivering the great blows which appealed so much to Madame de Sévigné. Their moral courage allows them to face all opponents without flinching, and a confrontation with a moral equal provides the opportunity for great self-assertion. The apparent success of a rival brings out in them a determination to overcome the opposition he represents. The women also reveal a healthy self-reliance and an ability to support their own interests, though none of the major female characters shares the Amazonian prowess of Talestris.

Some elements of the plot of Cassandre (presumably those which had been admired by readers or perhaps those which appealed most to the author) were picked out and developed in Cléopâtre. In Cassandre, the young Démétrius, an impulsive and passionate youth, falls violently in love with Hermione whom he has inadvertently wounded in battle. When she dies, he falls ill and himself comes dangerously close to dying. Having recovered, he erects a monument to Hermione where he spends his days in solitary sorrow, though later on he falls equally violently in love with Déidamie and eventually marries her. In Cléopâtre, the same strain of sensibility is expanded and dwelt on at length in the episode of Tyridate and Mariamne. Tyridate, a refugee at the court of Herod, had adored Mariamne but had always been aware that her feelings for him would never lead her into the slightest impropriety. When the news comes to him in Alexandria that she has been put to death, his heart breaks. He faints while the story of her death is being recounted; then, when there is no more to learn, 'la douleur faisant ses derniers efforts, luy serra le coeur de telle sorte,

---

2. Lettres, 12th and 15th July, 1671. The ability to deliver incredible blows is retained by the heroic characters throughout the novel: cf. I,291, VII,35, 361-72, IX,310, XI,207-8, 225.  
3. e.g. I,55, 245-50, II,6, 78-9.  
4. e.g. II,97, V,247-8, VIII,317. Ménalippe is the only character with any Amazonian qualities.
que ceste partie la premiere animée & la derniere mourante, ne fut plus capable de soustenir les fonctions necessaires à la conservation de la vie. Many pages are devoted to his emotions before he dies and to those of others who visit his tomb and read the inscription on it. Again, in Cassandre, the relationship between Bérénice and Arsace is affected by her resentment at being approached by what she assumes to be a man of inferior birth. When she realises his worth, she is still troubled by the social difference between them:

pleust aux Dieux qu'il fut né Prince, ...

though it is not long before Arsace's true identity is revealed. The same theme of nobility and vertu runs throughout Cléopâtre in the relationship between Elise and Artaban, who feels very strongly that his vertu entitles him to the power and glory denied to him by his social origins.7

Despite the inclusion of these well-tested features, the public's response to Cléopâtre does not appear to have been entirely favourable. In the Au lecteur of Volume IV (1648), La Calprenède begs the reader to suspend comparisons with Cassandre until more of the work has appeared, assuring him that 'dans ce que tu as veu de Cléopatre, tu n'es pas encore entré en matière, que c'est un champ plus estendu que tu ne te l'estois imaginé' and promising a lot of stories, written with 'assez de vray-semblance' and 'avec un ordre qui n'est possible pas commun.' We are told, too, that vaudevilles appeared, making fun of the Tyridate-Mariamne episode and suggesting that Mariamne had been sent to the Feuillantines by a jealous Herod.8 One such satire calls on the novel as evidence that she was a coquette who could not live without a lover:

Et d'elle on a pris la methode de faire enrager les maris
Alors qu'ils sont vieux comme Herode.9

5. V, 336.
6. Cassandre, VI, 1014.
7. See above, pp. 38-40.
Whether the public's reaction influenced it or not, the publication of *Cléopâtre* did not follow the steady pattern established by *Cassandre*. The first five volumes appeared regularly in 1647 and 1648. A revised privilège dated 21st February 1648 states that Cardin Besongne who had published Parts I-III now wished to publish Parts IV and V, 'dans laquelle doit estre la Conclusion dudit Ouvrage.' There are no indications in the text that it was due to be concluded after Volume V, and Volume VI followed soon afterwards in 1649. There was then, however, a break in publication until 1653 when two further volumes appeared, and the final four volumes were published in 1657. The breaks in publication may have been due to the economic difficulties caused by the Fronde, though it should be remembered that it was precisely during the years 1649-53 that *Le Grand Cyrus* established its considerable reputation.

The effect of this extended period of creation and publication is visible both in the construction of the work and in the type of character offered for the reader's admiration. *Cassandre* had been planned with a good deal of thought. The five parts of the novel provide the life-stories of the main characters as *tiroirs* while the main plot continues to develop, the action crystallising round the two battles of Babylon. The threads of the sub-plots are all brought together in the last part and only resolved with a good deal of suspense after the final battle. There is evidence that the work was conceived as a whole: for instance, in Volume II Oroondate returns home and is imprisoned by his father for two years; he is not allowed to see his sister Bérénice and is eventually released on condition that he leaves immediately to take charge of the army, the reasons for which do not become apparent until Volume VII. *Cléopâtre*, on the other hand, develops haphazardly. Some of the episodes

---

10. cf. 'Le Courrier burlesque de la guerre de Paris' (1650) (quoted by Magendie, *Le Roman français*, p. 405): 'On pensa chanter l'obit, de l'Ibrahim, de Polexandre, de Cleopatre, de Cassandre.'
trail off into *invraisemblance*. The main plot is thin for the weight of sub-plots it is required to carry. It contains no battles or physical action other than hand-to-hand skirmishes, and it has to be artificially extended by the abduction of Cléopâtre in Volume V and the attempted abduction of Elise in Volume VII. Even these *peripeteia* do not provide much impetus, for the suspense is allowed to ebb slowly away: the worst of the villains have been eliminated by the end of Volume IX, the major misunderstanding between Cléopâtre and Coriolan is already well on the way to being resolved by the time the truth is revealed in Volume X and a large proportion of the last few volumes is spent on the avoidance of action in *badinage* and *galanterie*.

The static and rather lax nature of the plot, acting as a framework for the kind of idealised conversation which was so popular in the novels of the 1650s, is paralleled by a corresponding change in the type of character presented. Even from the publication of Volume I, there had been indications that La Calprenède's inspiration was moving in a somewhat different direction. Whereas the first hundred pages of *Cassandre* had plunged straight into the heroic medium, showing supermen at war, jousting and performing acts of outstanding *générosité* of which only a few individuals would be capable, the first volume of *Cléopâtre* moves slowly. Most of it is given over to the story of Tyridate, a man capable of deep emotion who loved Mariamne with a disinterested love - 'je pouvois dire avec verité que j'aimois Mariamne pour l'amour d'elle seule, & que dans tout le cours de ma passion je ne consideray jamais Tyridate' — and to the history of Julius Caesar's

---

11. e.g. 'Suitte de l'Histoire de Cesarion', X,35-121.
12. Examples of ineptitude in the narrative are more frequent in *Cléopâtre* than in *Cassandre*. The following passage gives an idea of the prolixity achieved by La Calprenède: 'Elise qui par le voisinage de l'Armenie aux Royaumes de son pere & de l'alliance qui avoit esté dans leurs maisons, avoit appris avec toute l'Asie le naufrage d'Ariobarzane & d'Arsinooe & les croyoit morts par l'opinion generale, avançant la main & arrestant Olympie à ce commencement de son discours : Quoy, luy dit-elle, ce bel Inconnu ... est Ariobarzane, Prince d'Armenie, qui par un naufrage connu à toute l'Asie & qui luy fut commun avec la Princesse Arsinooe sa soeur a passé pour mort jusqu'icy dans l'opinion de tout le monde!' (VII,13).
13. I,72.
relationship with Cleopatra, in which the great conqueror, regarded as a god by the ordinary people, becomes a lovelorn suitor, declaring from her ruelle:

je meurs si par pitié vous ne me retirez
du tombeau, & je vous proteste par ces
beaux yeux que j'adore avec toute sorte
de respect, qu'il est impossible que ma
vie soit d'une plus longue durée si vous
ne la prolongez par votre bonté.15

A reduction in the heroes' fierceness and pride is noticeable. They are less aggressive, less concerned to impose themselves on the world by force of character. Césarion has 'l'esprit tres-docile' and is noted for his 'douces inclinations.'16 His step-brother, Alexandre,
'eust pû passer, si les habits de l'autre sexe l'y eussent favorisé, pour une des plus belles Dames de la terre',
though we are assured that 'dans la douceur de ses yeux on voyoit briller aussi quelque chose de tres-fier & de tres-martial.'17 They are naturally susceptible to love and,
unlike the heroes of preceding novels, fall irretrievably in love before they have proved themselves in battle.18
As a result, the commitment to ambition and gloire which had always been inherent in the hero is subordinated to love. It is considered entirely laudable that they should scorn all external manifestations of glory and give up 'toutes les choses dans la possession desquelles les personnes ambitieuses establiscent leur felicité'19 for the sake of their love. Nor are their declarations to this effect hollow: Coriolan reconquers the kingdom his father had lost in order to be able to offer Cléopâtre a crown but, when she rejects him, he loses interest in it and allows it to fall into the hands of the Romans again.

15. I,172.
17. IV,18 ; cf. X,46-7 and Oroondate's entirely masculine beauty (Cassandre, I,11).
Love having become the dominant theme, the point of focus for the narration has shifted in *Cléopâtre*. Cassandre had depicted the events it portrayed from the central point of the action, the house near Babylon where Oroondate and his companions assemble and from which they attack their enemies. The stories recounting past events range over wide areas, following the heroes as they travel, taking in duels and battles and occasional visits to courts. The experiences of the heroines, Statira and Parisatis, are not accorded any great amount of space while they are outside the main area of action. In *Cléopâtre*, however, the story is attached at all points to a number of "social bases", places away from wars and violent activities (other than sudden abductions and the skirmishes they provoke) where life can be lived in a leisurely and graceful way. The most important of these is in Alexandria, at the houses of Tyridate and the Roman governor, Cornelius Gallus. It is peopled mainly by the female characters until the men begin to return one by one from their various adventures, and gradually takes on the appearance of a court, completed when Augustus arrives from Rome. 20

Most of the subsidiary episodes start from the court of a kingdom and treat it as the point of reference so that battles and great deeds are of importance only for the effect they have on the situation at the base, where they are assessed by a group. The story of Césarion and Candace, for example, is related from the point of view of the Ethiopian court, with reports of Césarion's victories brought in from the provinces. 21 Ariobarzane's military successes are viewed with wonder from the distance of the Thracian court. 22 The imperial court of Rome is the starting-point for a number of such episodes, and the size of the court leads to more complex, interacting relationships. The story of Coriolan and

20. XI,124.
Cléopâtre is played out against the background of a large group of aristocrats in Rome and their relationship depends on the influence and intrigue of many other people. The Emperor's all-powerful position and his support of Coriolan's rival, Tibère, interferes with the hero's natural urge to impose his will on the situation. When Coriolan and Tibère go off to war determined to outdo each other in valour for the service of Cléopâtre, the gloire they achieve still has to be validated by the Emperor, who is himself not entirely made up of heroic virtues. Towards the end of the novel, he again disturbs the free play of heroic natural selection by supporting the claims of the worthy but not outstanding Roman, Agrippa, in his suit for the hand of Elise against the entirely heroic Artaban, this time for the political reason that he wishes to subject Elise's kingdom of Parthia to Rome. The hero, wandering free across the world, has here been tamed and made to fit in with the restrictions of the civil order. From being a figure on a personal quest, following his ideal wherever destiny may lead him, he has become a member of a social group sharing common ideals, to which he returns whenever possible.

The relationship between hero and heroine is also to a certain extent shared with the group in that their love develops almost in public, with others offering advice, sometimes taking sides in differences, arranging meetings and so on, to the point where the collective attitude threatens to become more important than the individual's. Antonia, noted for her reserve, is wooed by an unknown knight who arranges extravagant public displays of his affection, such as a trip in an illuminated boat worked with her name and symbols of love. At a tournament, he enters as her champion, again with much evidence of his love for her.

24. XI, 173 et seq.
25. IX, 142-5, 180-98.
When it is eventually revealed that he is Drusus, the Emperor's son, he apologises to Antonia's brothers for having approached her in this unusual way. They approve his endeavours and take him to see the Emperor and Empress, at the same time urging Antonia to receive him into her service. 'Toute l'Assemblée éclatta en applaudissements à la vue & à la connaissance de Drusus : & comme il estoit aymé de tout le monde, il n'y eut personne qui n'appriüst avec joye que c'estoit luy, qui avoit fait des choses si galantes pour Antonia, qui ne criast qu'ils estoient dignes l'un de l'autre & que c'estoit le couple du monde le mieux assorty.' The Emperor and Empress join the others in begging Antonia to accept Drusus and to allow him to attack 'par la guerre ouverte ce coeur qu'il avoit voulu surprendre par artifice.' As a result, Antonia's own reactions are pre­empted : even though she feels 'quelque dépit de la tromperie qu'il luy avoit faite', she has to suppress it and accept the general will.26 Similarly, Lentulus' love for Tullia becomes the preoccupation of most of the court, including the imperial family:

Ils plaignoient tous mon infortune qui leur estoit connuë en partie, & faisoient tous leurs efforts pour me retirer de cette fatale passion qui m'avoit perdu.27

It is only a short step from this emphasis on the attitudes of the social group to the point where conversations about general aspects of galanterie are substituted for individual manifestations of love, as happened in Le Grand Cyrus, Clélie and other novels of the 1650s. The later volumes of Cléopâtre include a few such discussions, on how a suitor should approach the woman he loves and the kind of favour she can legitimately bestow on him28, but in general La Calprenède does not offer the reader analyses of the metaphysics of love so much as an impression of a glittering court in which individual characteristics are

27. XI,69.
submerged in collective activities. Increasingly as the novel progresses, the heroic characters are mere ornaments for a round of entertainments, participating in the pleasures Parisian high society enjoyed and the bourgeoisie dreamed of, 'une superbe collation, le divertissement de la Comedie, de la Musique, & de la promenade.'

The distance separating Cléopâtre from Cassandre is illustrated by the episode of Alcamène and Ménalippe in Volume VIII of Cléopâtre which seems as though it might well have been left over from Cassandre, so great is the similarity to the earlier conception of heroism. Alcamène is, like Oroondate, a prince of Scythia who wins magnificent victories at the head of his father's army and then, 'pressé d'un ardent désir de faire quelques voyages & de visiter inconnu les Cours estrangeres', leaves his troops and travels incognito to the neighbouring kingdom of the Dacians, the enemies of his father. Here, he falls in love with Princess Ménalippe, is suspected of infidelity and, after the most extraordinarily complex series of adventures, is united with her at last. It is not the events, however, which recall Cassandre so much as the place accorded to stirring actions and moral liberty. The battle between the Scythians and the Dacians occupies a central position: lists are given of the provinces from which the troops come, the preparations are described in detail, the fighting itself is covered from many different angles, giving an impression of movement and energy. Alcamène is a man who accepts no limitations on his freedom of action: he relies on direct confrontation to overcome opposition. His pride asserts itself even when Ménalippe has declared her hatred for him and he refuses to give in to his rivals:

s'il faut perdre une vie également odieuse à Menalippe & à Alcamene, je la perdray plus glorieusement aux pieds de Menalippe par la main d'Alcamene que dans la place de Seriga par celle de Phratapherne ou de Merodate.

29. IX,97 ; cf. IX,95-101, 131, XI,139 et seq., 204 et seq. 30. VIII,123. 31. This episode was used by Thomas Corneille as the basis for his very successful play, Timocrate. 32. VIII,205-18. 33. VIII,305.
Ménalippe is a fiery woman who can fight with men on equal terms, defies her captors, disobeys her mother rather than betray her love and stabs the man she thinks has caused her irreparable loss. The relationship between the two lovers matches their approach to life. They are drawn immediately towards one another and acknowledge the fact quite readily. There is deference on the part of Alcamène but no undue reserve in Ménalippe, no fear of his advances, no withdrawal behind a protective screen of bienséance. Above all, they have no interest in the reactions of the courtiers around them, for they rely on their inclinations and have no need to submit them for approval to a norm established by a group. They are free individuals.

The kind of relationship existing between Alcamène and Ménalippe is not found elsewhere in Cléopâtre. The other male-female relationships are affected by a significant change in the concept of love which altered the moral balance between the sexes. In Cassandre, love had been an extension of the pride by which the hero and heroine ordered their lives. Both of them welcomed the emotion provided their moral liberty was guaranteed and each had specific ways of preventing any attempt, real or imagined, to suppress that liberty. In Cléopâtre, the male's pride has virtually disappeared as far as love is concerned. Service must be offered to the lady, but not with any pretensions to earning a reward:

on peut esperer de sa bonté ... ce qu'il luy plaira de nous accorder, mais ce seroit estre temeraire beaucoup plustost que hardy, que de pretendre comme des choses qu'on peut meriter ce qu'on ne doit attendre que par une pure grace.35

Submission must be complete and eradicate all personal desires: the aim is threefold, 'de luy rendre ce que nous devons aux Dieux avec une soumission beaucoup plus entière que celle que nous avons pour eux, ... de ne rien faire & de ne rien penser que pour sa gloire, & ... ou de passer ma vie ou de treuver ma mort dans les occasions de la servir.'36

34. See above, pp. 191-2.
35. II,70.
36. III,275 ; cf. VI,207.
When the lady, through a misunderstanding, rejects her suitor, the new hero has no access of pride urging him to strike back. Oroondate is uncouth compared with Coriolan who never dreams of suggesting that Cléopâtre might be ungrateful but, like Polexandre, assumes that he must have incurred her justifiable wrath for something of which he is not aware.

Pride on the part of the male would be misplaced in Cléopâtre if it ever found its way in because of the assumption throughout the novel that the male is morally inferior to the female owing to his propensity for passion. The neo-platonic theory that love is subject to the will, still found in Polexandre and Ibrahim, has gone: l'amour d'élection has been replaced by l'amour d'inclination. Love is an overwhelming force which renders the will powerless and forces itself upon the unsuspecting individual. Once it has taken hold, it rapidly becomes dominant and may well pervert established moral responses. Adallas develops an incestuous passion for his sister and tells her 'j'y suis porté par une puissance à laquelle je ne puis resister & attaché par une nécessité qui me forcera de vous aimer jusqu'au tombeau.' Philadelphe, carried away by his passion for Delie, informs her that she cannot expect morality from 'celuy que vous ne laisses pas en estat de recoignoistre ce qu'il doit à la nature, à la vertu & à vos volontés.' Often the lover can appreciate the course of action he ought to take to throw off his passion and can give good advice to others, but is incapable of following it himself.

There are women who react in the same way to love, generally marginal characters. Eurinoé is determined to take revenge on Césarion but is struck with love for him, being possessed of 'un coeur qu'une puissance superieure ou une estrange fatalité firent passer d'une extrémité à une autre.' Olimpie finds herself falling in love with a man she hardly knows, though she tells herself she is being 'peu raisonnable.'

37. VI,65.
38. IV,315.
39. V,255-6, VI,193, VII,58, VIII,301, IX,45.
40. X,57.
41. VI,103.
Woman's greater moral strength saves them, however. Eurinoé and Tullia throw off their passion and follow the inclination dictated by reason; Olimpie hides her feelings until she is sure that the man she loves is worthy of her and it is safe to reveal her affection. With most of the female characters, reason never allows love to reach the point at which it is out of control. Women act as a moderating influence on the more violent emotions of the men and exercise the restraint which their lovers are incapable of showing. A contrast is made, for instance, between the constancy, patience and 'prodigieuse force de son esprit' shown by Mariamne and the violent excesses of her husband and indeed, though in a different category, of Tyridate, at whose extravagances she sometimes laughs. Ovid is guided by Cipassis: 'quand je m'y laissois emporter (i.e. aux violences de mon amour), elle me savoait fort bien remettre dans la moderation qu'elle desiroit de moy & me reduire sous l'empire de la raison.' Arminius, dissatisfied with the 'complaisance' he gets from Isménie, wants her to share his passion, but 'comme elle se rendoit aisément à la raison, elle resistoit fortement à ce qu'elle jugeoit déraisonnable, ou tant soit peu éloigné d'une severe honnesteté.'

In the grip of their involuntary impulses, the men are tempted to interpret such rational attitudes as indifference. Arminius is offended that Isménie repays his passion 'd'une simple bienveillance, & d'une bienveillance qui ne trouble pas pour un seul moment la tranquillité de vostre ame !' Tyridate protests that no duty could 'raisonnablement' oblige Mariamne to reject him but only a lack of affection, to which she replies: 'L'affection que je dois avoir pour vous ... ne me pouvoit pas raisonnablement obliger à ce que j'ay fait pour vous complaire.' Since the men cannot appreciate the distinction between their own disordered

42. X,81, XI,118.
43. VI,121.
44. I,39 et seq., I,97.
45. VII,286-7.
46. XI,231 ; cf. VI,287. Artémise develops a vehement passion for Alexandre (IV,131) but it is a rational passion based on obligation as well as feeling (IV,137-8, 149, 176).
47. XI,235.
48. I,143.
passions and the finer sentiments experienced by their mistresses, other terms have to be brought in to differentiate the various levels and forms of emotion involved. *Estime, affection, bienveillance*—these terms, much used in the salons of the 1650s, allow La Calprenède to define the moral gap which has developed between his heroes and heroines.49

Although he does not devote much space to analyses of the emotions and is not concerned to specify the precise limits of each of these terms, La Calprenède has clearly been influenced by the concept of hommêle amitié evolved by Madeleine de Scudéry and her circle. Whereas in Cassandre male and female values had maintained their respective validities and had found a level at which both could exist, the male in Cléopâtre is aware that he has much to learn about the emotions and that what he considers natural may in fact be potentially dangerous. With his energetic and straightforward approach to life, he is basically rather an unsophisticated being. He needs the civilising influence of woman with her innate sense of bienséance and her knowledge of the channels through which emotion should properly be directed. He therefore accepts her moral superiority and subjects himself to the social norms she has established, behaving with galanterie, suppressing his self-interest and endeavouring to achieve that 'amitié parfaite, qui est l'union des Coeurs, la joye des Ames, l'assortissement de tous les plaisirs humains, & la souveraine felicité de cette vie.'50

---

49. In the character of Julie, La Calprenède comes close to a genuine psychological realism. His accounts of the effects of jealousy have an emotional truth not found elsewhere in the work (II, 119-25, 193-205, V, 273 et seq.) ; cf. Junie in Segrais' Pérénice.

however, has been reduced. He is aware that the driving force which makes him invincible on the battlefield is a weakness when it comes to emotional relationships with the opposite sex: the energy which enables him to besiege and capture a town is of no use in besieging a mistress. His inability to control his passions means that he cannot claim to be entirely in control of his own destiny.

The hero is now therefore a man who can impose his will on other men but who appreciates that he must bow before the superior moral power of woman. Coriolan, Césarion, Artaban, Philadelphe, Ariobarzane and Arminius have no difficulty in coming to terms with other men but they are at a disadvantage with women, for it is the latter with their stronger rational faculty who establish what is right and wrong. If the male could guarantee control over his emotions, he could retain his freedom, but as soon as he becomes the victim of a violent passion, which is likely to happen at any time, he is obliged to adopt the woman's terms. (Men who refuse to acknowledge their inferiority and insist on following their crude male impulses are criminals, like Tigrane and Adallas). He must submerge all self-interest in the service of the lady; he must accept unquestioningly the course which she has decided he is to follow; he must put aside all other aspirations.

Though most of the virtuous male characters are created in this new mould, Cléopâtre also includes two important variations on the kind of hero mentioned above. With Tyridate, La Calprenède has created the hero of sensibility whose supernormal qualities are animated entirely by love. His courage is stimulated by love, his patience is inexhaustible in the cause of love; he is disinterested, unselfish and sincere, and as soon as love gives way completely to grief, the life flows out of him.

The second variation is represented by the Roman, Agrippa. He is courageous and noble but he belongs to a different category from Coriolan, Césarion and Artaban since his virtues are primarily civic. He has a place in the state
and guarantees order, not as a law-maker such as a military hero might become but as an interpreter of the law. He belongs to a kind of Roman noblesse de robe, having no charisma himself but reflecting the glory of Caesar under whose authority he operates. In a sense, therefore, he represents an infusion of female values into the world of heroism, substituting debate for physical combat and mature reflection for spontaneity. The three men who love Elise provide an interesting example of contrasting levels of reaction. Tigrane, the victim of uncontrollable passions, tries to abduct Elise; Artaban, the traditional hero, rescues her and defeats Tigrane; Agrippa, 'qu'aucune passion ne pouvait faire sortir des bornes de son devoir', tells Tigrane to plead his case before Caesar who is due to arrive shortly. Later, Agrippa considers his feelings. He knows that Elise favours Artaban but, 'comme toutes ses pensées estoient conformes à l'honneur & à la générosité', he does not want to use the authority he wields in his own interest, but tries to find a compromise 'pour concilier son Amour avec sa vertu.' He falls ill from the effort of trying to effect such a reconciliation but when Elise writes to him to say that she is being persecuted because of his love for her, he is dismayed by the thought that he should have made someone else suffer. He decides that 'il falloit faire sur cette passion qui avoit produit de si mauvais effets un effort aussi grand que les maux qu'elle avoit causés.' He emerges triumphant from the struggle and urges the Emperor to unite Elise with Artaban: 'il a combattu cette passion, ennemie de sa gloire & de son devoir, & par le secours de son courage il l'a mise en estat de ne troubler plus sa vertu.' By this victory over his passion, Agrippa stands apart from the traditional heroes in the novel and perhaps represents the beginning of a new form of hero, one who displays some of the female virtues of moderation and emotional discipline.

51. VII, 372.
52. X, 9.
53. XII, 332.
54. XII, 360.
The differences discernible in the kind of hero depicted by La Calprenède between 1642 and 1657 can no doubt be explained by reference to the changes in the society for which he was writing. Cassandre had appeared during the first years of the Regency when an atmosphere of aristocratic exuberance pervaded Parisian society and the martial qualities which the noblesse d'épée felt were their special preserve were being demonstrated in the campaigns of the Thirty Years' War. Much of Cléopâtre, on the other hand, reflects the less warlike atmosphere of the period following the end of the Fronde, when the virtues of the warrior were beginning to be less highly regarded and when strongly feminist views were being heard in the salons. After the success of Le Grand Cyrus, La Calprenède had to take account of the new fashion for novels reflecting closely the preoccupations of these new salons and circles.

It has been suggested that there is a more obvious link with contemporary events in Volume XII, when Coriolan and Césarion are imprisoned by the Emperor and are liberated by a popular uprising, calling to mind the imprisonment of the princes in 1650 and their subsequent release after an anti-Mazarin uprising. It seems unlikely that La Calprenède was intending to draw a direct parallel with the events of the Fronde since he has gone out of his way to show the Emperor as a man capable of great injustice, vengeance and cruelty: in 1657 it would have been unwise to suggest such things of the king. This episode is of importance, however, for the light it throws on La Calprenède's commitment to the idea of a morally independent aristocracy, subject to the ruler in certain matters but protecting its own values to the point of death if necessary. While Augustus is applying his power unjustly, seeking revenge on Coriolan

---

56. The reader is informed of the occasion when he had told an entire town that they were to be put to death and had replied to those going to execution who had asked for a proper burial 'que cette grace estoit en la disposition des corbeaux' (XII, 349).
and Césarion and trying to coerce Cléopâtre and Elise into marriage, the princes display their générosité: Alcamène plans to use his Scythian troops to free the prisoners, Artaban heads an uprising and storms the fortress where they are held.

Throughout the whole finale, Augustus' self-interest and lack of principle are contrasted with the heroic virtues of the princes. When matters have reached deadlock, Coriolan presents himself unarmed before Augustus 'avec une assurance digne de la grandeur de son courage, accompagnée d'une modestie qui luy estoit naturelle' and offers his life provided Cléopâtre and Marcel are spared. This is the act of a true généreux but it meets with an unheroic response from the Emperor who intends to take the opportunity to execute Coriolan: there is no clemency in La Calprenède's Augustus whereas Coriolan had always shown mercy to his enemies. It then emerges that Coriolan had prevented Césarion from striking the Emperor down during one of the skirmishes outside the fortress. Caesar is amazed at his enemy's virtue, though Coriolan declares that he acted out of friendship for Marcel: 'sans le respect que j'ai pour tout ce qui est aimé de Marcel, je n'eusse pas eu ce soin pour la vie d'un si cruel ennemy.' Even now, Augustus is incapable of rising above the limitations of politics to impose a magnanimous solution and it is only when the problem of Tibère's claim to Cléopâtre is resolved that he can bring himself to unite Coriolan and Cléopâtre. Consequently, Coriolan's declaration of submission strikes a hollow note: 'c'est maintenant que je sens la douleur & le repentir de vous avoir offencé, & que par cette bonté, plustost que par tous les effets de vostre puissance, je vous reconnais pour mon Seigneur & mon Empereur.'

57. XII,348.
58. XII,349; II,51.
59. XII,354. It is interesting to note that the Bibliothèque universelle des romans gives an entirely royalist interpretation to the episode in which Coriolan protects the Emperor, making him say: 'Ne frappez pas, ... cette tête est sacrée, ménageons-la' (April 1789, p. 187. cf. Cléopâtre, XII,301).
60. XII,358.
is no doubt who has emerged as the hero. To La Calprenède, the *noblesse d'épée* were evidently still the guardians of the heroic virtues, however they might have become modified by changing social circumstances and however much the royal power might have increased.
CHAPTER XII

Le Grand Cyrus

After the publication of *Ibrahim*, Georges and Madeleine de Scudéry had left Paris in 1644 for Provence where they stayed until 1647. By the time they returned to the capital the novel was dominated by *La Calprenède* whose *Cléopâtre* had just started appearing. His formula of aristocratic individualism and love rooted in pride, established with *Cassandre*, had been used for a number of novels including *Scanderberg* and *Bérenger*, and it was this formula which the Scudérys adopted for their new novel. The general framework of *Artamène ou le Grand Cyrus*\(^1\) reproduces many of the features of *Cassandre* — the setting in ancient Persia, the hero who appears in another country under an assumed name and falls in love with the king's daughter, the efforts he makes to rescue his beloved from her abductors.

During the period when he is known as Artamène (Volumes I and II), Cyrus is very much a self-centred hero, concerned above all to increase his gloire. His attitude towards others is conditioned by the same need to maintain his status as that experienced by Oroondate. Sparing the life of a villain, for instance, is not so much an act of magnanimity as of self-esteem, because 'il y auroit trop peu d'honneur à te l'oster.'\(^2\) He throws himself into physical combat, either as one of an army or singly, rushing ahead of the rest of his comrades\(^3\), revelling in the triumph over his opponents, shouting 'j'ay vaincu' with undisguised

---

2. I,532.
3. I,590.
pride. He gains a tremendous pleasure from defying overwhelming odds. There is in these early volumes a continuous series of battles, skirmishes and duels from which Cyrus emerges victorious and which absorb most of his energy. He has no responsibility for the overall progress of affairs in that he is subject to King Ciaxare and can therefore devote all his efforts to the furtherance of his gloire. It is Scudéry's version of the Cyropaedia, emphasising his hero's fougue and youthful pride.

At this early stage, Cyrus has no time for love: war is the only activity worthy of his attention, the only path to heroic glory. After he has seen Princess Mandane in the temple, however, he is disturbed by a new emotion which disputes with gloire for pre-eminence in his mind, but the love which establishes itself there is dependent to a large extent on self-esteem. When Mandane urges him to be less conspicuous in battle by wearing less striking armour, he refuses because war is one area where her wishes are secondary to heroic self-proclamation. Similarly, though she is angry that Cyrus has fought with his rival against her express wishes, Mandane is worried that she may offend him if she objects too strongly where his honour is in question. His respect for her does not go as far as self-effacement and he is capable of complaining about the treatment he receives:

\[\text{si j'estoiss dans vostre espirit de la facon dont j'y pourrois estre, vous auriez un peu plus d'indulgence pour mon amour.}\]

In the face of such an insistent and self-centred passion, Mandane, like Statira and Bérénice in Cassandre, has to ensure that her own position is secure. Love threatens to overcome her gloire and must therefore be reduced to a less intense level: what she offers Cyrus is esteem and gratitude, or at the most 'une tendresse infinie' and 'une fidelité inesbranlable.'

---

5. I, 325.
8. II, 25.
The concept of heroism which permeates the early volumes of Cyrus is thus based on the same egocentric, aristocratic ethic of personal fulfilment as that in Cassandre. Hero and heroine work their way towards an emotional understanding while carefully maintaining their own moral independence. As the novel progresses, however, the way in which Cyrus is depicted changes. The tension between Cyrus and Mandane is replaced as the driving force behind the plot by the romanesque device of abduction, used repeatedly until the end of the novel. The plot settles down into a series of attempts by Cyrus to rescue Mandane. The king whose interests he had been representing fades from the scene and Cyrus conquers one country after another in his own name as he relentlessly pursues those who have abducted Mandane. His stature increases: he is known throughout the world for his exploits but, more important, he is esteemed by all for his equity and magnanimity. He is less concerned with acquiring gloire than with dispensing justice to those who need it: 'il avoit l'ame si Grande, qu'il estoit incapable de manquer jamais à rien de ce qu'il estoit obligé de faire.' He turns into a superhero like Polexandre, presiding over a crowd of heroic individuals, all admirable but lacking his supreme charisma. He helps them to solve their problems and in some cases sends them home united with their beloved but, again like Polexandre, he comes to feel that, though he can bring happiness to others, he himself is doomed to unhappiness.

The changing flavour of the work is reflected in the tiroirs. Some of those in the early volumes recount heroic adventures and build up impressive pictures of extraordinary individuals in the traditional manner, but a greater number offer nouvelles in which unexceptional characters, closely related to the main characters, are involved. Crésus seriously suggests that the repeated abductions of Mandane are the method adopted by the gods to make Cyrus the conqueror of all Asia (VII, 27-28).

identified with a group attached to a "social base", usually a court, involve themselves in and extricate themselves from emotional entanglements.

From Volume V onwards, the pattern of the work has taken on a markedly different form from that of the original formula. The main plot continues steadily on, with Cyrus moving from one country to another tracking down the third and fourth abductors of Mandane. As he goes, he collects around him a crowd of lesser heroes and heroines whose stories are told in the intercalated episodes and who fill out the areas of the plot not occupied with military action. There are battles between Cyrus' army and those of his rivals, based closely, as Victor Cousin demonstrated, on the campaigns of the Prince de Condé, and the confrontations with Thomiris in Volume X add movement and suspense but, for the rest, the main plot largely takes the form of a series of conversations dealing with galanterie. The princes and princesses accompanying Cyrus and Mandane behave as though they were in a travelling salon, making few concessions to the conditions they are required to live in. They compose 'cette belle Cour errante', passing the time in exactly the same way as they would in Sardis or Suse:

cette belle Cour errante,

The war which was the original occasion of the expedition consequently tends to be relegated to second place. Galanterie

15. See V. Cousin, La Société française au XVIIe siècle d'après le Grand Cyrus de Mlle de Scudéry, 2 vols. (Paris, 1858), II, 370-413, 414-43. Cousin showed that the characters in Le Grand Cyrus are based on contemporaries of Madeleine de Scudéry and the portraits were no doubt recognisable in their day, but with many of the characters, the author's primary concern was to create psychological verisimilitude; cf. A. Le Breton, Le Roman au XVIIe siècle, 6th edn. (Paris, 1932), pp. 176-82.

16. VIII, 1085.

17. VIII, 1087.
is the primary occupation in life and war can at times be something of an intrusion:

pour faire voir combien Cyrus estoit aymé de tous ceux qui le connaiss-oient, il ne faut que sçavoir que Ligdamis, Thrasimede, Menecrate, Parmenide & Philistion, quoy qu'ils fussent encore Amans de leurs Femmes, les quitterent pour suivre ce Prince à la guerre, bien qu'il voulust les en dispenser.18

Main plot and tiroirs alike turn into a vehicle for the kind of analysis of the passions, the emotional casuistry which was to be recognised as the distinctive mark of préciosité. Some of the episodes are no more than accounts of conversations between Madeleine de Scudéry and her friends in which any genuine appreciation of feeling is smothered beneath the refinements of galanterie. Some, however, reveal an insight into the complexities of human emotion which, in comparison with the earlier heroic novels, is startling. The idea (still found in Mitridate, Alcide and Bérenger amongst others) that love is a simple passion which can be associated with other simple passions such as gloire but which by definition is quite separate from hatred or jealousy has given way to an awareness that love embraces a large number of conflicting emotions and that the way in which these emotions interact is a mystery to the person suffering them. Their effects can be noted but their cause cannot be explained: they are outside the area of rational control, though any person who falls victim to them is tempted to rationalise the behaviour they force upon him.

The analysis of love in those few episodes in which Madeleine de Scudéry has resisted the urge to make concessions to the salon is a worthy adumbration of Madame de La Fayette and Racine.19

18. VII,610 ; cf. V,193 et seq.
Love as it is represented establishes itself before the lover is aware of any emotional attachment on his part. It has nothing to do with reason or a response towards particular qualities in another person: 'l'Amour... se vante d'etre au dessus de la raison, de naistre plustost dans le coeur que dans l'esprit, & de naistre mesme sans le consentement de ceux dans le coeur desquels il naist.'20 It makes no difference what conscious defences are prepared, 'dès que nous craignons d'aimer quelqu'un, nous l'aimons desja,'21, and emotions are formed and fade without reference to the will of the person concerned. Jealousy mingles itself as a well-nigh inevitable ingredient in love, confusing the victim's attempts to understand his situation: in the more violent characters, love can produce reactions indistinguishable from those of hatred.22 As their passions pull them one way and another, they are prepared, like Racine's characters, to accept as second best a relationship based on any sort of positive response, even hatred or anger, if they are denied the love they crave. Indifference is worse than hatred:

je pensois du moins n'estre que hai,
... mais par ce cruel oubli où vous estes de tout ce qui me regarde, je voy bien que je suis encore en un estat plus deplorable que je ne croyois, puis qu'assurément je suis mesprisé: ... Il y a du moins quel-que sentiment dans une ame qui hait:
& il n'est pas absolument impossible que l'amour naisses parmy le feu de la colere. Mais d'un esprit froid & insensible, qui ne conserve nul souve-nir de tout ce que l'on a fait pour l'obliger: le moyen d'en esperer de la tendresse & de la reconnoissance?23

There is a suggestion too that love brings out in some of those it affects an urge to dominate rather than a desire to serve.

20. VI,321; cf. III,358-9: 'pourquoy ne m'aimez-vous point?
c'est parce que je ne le puis, dit-elle; & c'est pour cette mesme raison, luy dis-je, que je ne scourois non plus cesser de vous aimer, que vous cesser de me hair.'
21. VI,1134.
23. III,345-6, 347.
The story of Cléobuline illustrates many of the aspects of love mentioned above. As Queen of Corinth, Cléobuline is naturally concerned with her gloire and status but finds to her horror that she has fallen in love with Myrinthe, a worthy man but socially inferior to her. All her efforts to reason away her passion are useless and she concludes that all she can hope to do is conceal it. Her feelings are complicated, however, by the fact that Myrinthe loves Philimène and she is unable to prevent herself from revealing to her confidente, Stésilée, the mixture of love, pride and jealousy which is torturing her:

j'aime sans estre aimée ; j'aime sans qu'on le sçache ; & j'aime une Personne qui aime ailleurs. Et cependant je l'aime de telle sorte, que je ne puis cesser de l'aimer, ny souffrir qu'il en ait une autre : quoy que je ne voulusse pas qu'il sçeuist que je l'aime, ny qu'il me dist jamais qu'il m'aïmast, quand mesme il pourroit arriver qu'il m'aïmeroit.

She even confesses eventually who the man is and how violently her emotions are affecting her whole view of the world, including her self-respect:

je sens que l'amour que j'ay pour Myrinthe devient haine contre moy-mesme : & que la jalousie que j'ay pour Philimene devient fureur contre ma propre raison.

Like the Princesse de Clèves suffering from comparable emotions, she recalls the lessons she has received, 'que la tranquilité de l'esprit estoit le plus grand de tous les biens, & que cette tranquilité estoit à l'ame ce que la santé est au corps : c'est à dire que sans elle, on ne peut jouir de nulle sorte de plaisir.' Faced with her own weakness, she finally decides that she must marry Myrinthe to Philimène and this move brings about a radical change in the emotional balance. Myrinthe, married to

25. VII, 750-1.
Philimène but aware that the queen loves him, loses interest in his wife and falls in love with Cléobuline: she, however, reacts in the opposite way: 'plus elle connoist que Myrinthe est amoureux d'elle, plus elle s'en esloigne.'

The sort of emotional veracity evident in the story of Cléobuline casts an entirely new light on the heroic ethic. Gloire, générosité and vertu stand out as the façade which a person of eminence is expected to maintain: they are not necessarily a guarantee of superhuman forces behind. Cléobuline's regal status makes certain demands on her which she is not entirely convinced she needs to obey. She seriously considers marrying Myrinthe, feeling she has the same right to happiness as any other woman, and gloire only just wins the contest for supremacy in her heart. It has sufficient force to prevent her transgressing the external requirements of kingship - 'si la gloire ne venoit à mon secours, je retomberois dans ma première foiblesses' - but she realises that her own vertu is not strong enough to maintain her at a level where she is morally matched to her status:

\[
\text{il ne faut point te fier à ta propre vertu : car avec toute ta gloire, il y aurait de la folie à te confier à tes propres forces.}\]

Her decision to marry Myrinthe to Philimène is a desperate attempt to do something irrevocable before her resolve to maintain her gloire collapses. She begs Philiste to convince her that she has done the right thing, that 'il y a plus de Grandeur de courage à faire ce que je fais, qu'il n'y a eu de foiblesses à me laisser vaincre.' From being the natural expression of a heroic will to impose a personal order on the world, gloire has become an obligation to be fulfilled, in opposition to the natural desires of the heart.

A similar analysis of love and its relationship with heroic emotions is found in certain other episodes, notably

28. VII,901. The emotions of Myrinthe when he discovers that he is loved by Cléobuline are subjected to a similar close analysis (VII,813-6, 843).
29. VII,851.
30. VII,870.
32. VII,886.
'Histoire de Bélésis, d'Hermogène, de Cléodore et de Léonise,' and 'Histoire d'Aglatidas et d'Amestris.' The interaction of pride, jealousy and love is followed through with few concessions to the demands of the romanesque. The discrepancy between the reality of a lover's feelings and the rational account he tries to give of them is made clear. Bélésis tells his friend, Hermogène, 'je ne pourrois jamais recevoir un plus sensible déplaisir que de vous voir aimé de Cléodore, quoý que j'aime tousjours Leonise', though it is evident he still loves Cléodore. Cléodore triumphs when she tells Bélésis she is going to marry Hermogène, experiencing 'une assez grande joye d'avoir connu avec certitude dans les yeux de Belesis qu'il estoit encore pour elle ce qu'il avoit esté autrefois. Ce ne fut pourtant pas dans le dessein de luy pardonner, mais seulement parce qu'elle esperera le rendre plus malheureux', and she cannot understand why she subsequently suffers feelings of regret over Bélésis.

The concept of human nature embodied in episodes such as these is basically deterministic. The passions are formed involuntarily by 'une génération perpétuelle ..., en sorte que la ruine de l'une est presque toujours l'établissement d'une autre', as La Rochefoucauld was to put it. The victim of love finds himself behaving in a way he did not intend and has to try to come to terms with an aspect of his being over which he has little, if any, control. He will almost certainly experience jealousy and possibly hatred as well. The people who are shown suffering these emotions are not depicted as abnormal or despicable, as they would have been in Polexandre: on the contrary, they are generally admirable. Cléobuline, for instance, is heroic

---

33. V, 869-1198.
34. I, 723-1079, IV, 442-746.
37. La Rochefoucauld, Maximes, ed. Truchet (Paris, 1967), Max. 10, p. 9. Comments in Cyrus such as that by Cléorante: 'ne nous y trompons pas, nostre interest particulier va tousjours devant l'interest general, & tous ces zelez pour la Patrie ne le sont bien souvent que pour leur propre bien' (IX, 1055) suggest that the ground was being prepared for La Rochefoucauld's Maximes even in the heroic novel.
'par la Grandeur de son ame, par la noblesse de ses inclinations, par la generosité de son coeur, & par l'estendue de son esprit;' she practises liberality in a noble and heroic manner and combines the severity of justice with the gentleness of clemency.

The contrast is all the greater, therefore, when the main plot continues to postulate the freedom of the individual to direct his passions towards the end which he considers the best. Cyrus is shown as a man who experiences strong emotions but who never allows them to force him into performing an unheroic deed or harbouring an ungenerous thought. His reason is his constant guide. He lectures Aryante, the last of the abductors of Mandane, a naturally virtuous man who 'sentoit une repugnance estrange toutes les fois que son amour le forçoit a s'esloigner des sentiments que la vertu inspire', asserting that love had never made him do anything of which he needed to repent or which could be held as a reproach against him. Aryante murmurs that it is so easy to be equitable when one is fortunate, so difficult not to be unjust when one is wretched, but Cyrus will not accept any excuses: 'Puis que vous ne voulez pas que je vous considere ... comme un homme qui soit obligé à escouter ny la raison, ny la justice, ny la generosité, ny la reconnoissance, mais seulement comme un homme que l'amour dispense de tous les devoirs de la société raisonnable ... '. To Cyrus, anyone who suggests that his emotions excuse his actions has admitted his inferiority.

The power of love is not entirely subject to the reason, even in Cyrus and Mandane, for each of them falls victim to jealousy. Cyrus is perturbed that his greatest rival might be the one to rescue Mandane: 'la fureur s'empare de mon esprit ; la jalousie que je ne connoissois presques point, trouble ma raison.' When his fears prove

38. VII, 713.
40. X, 495.
41. X, 468.
42. III, 1279-80.
groundless and Kandane remains undelivered, he feels almost as much joy as sorrow 'par un bizarre sentiment d'amour & de jalousie tout ensemble.' Mandane acknowledges to herself that her own jealousy is a weakness but does not like to admit to it publicly. Thomiris, the Queen of the Massagètes, who plays an important rôle in the sequence of events at the end of the novel, is a violent, passionate woman whose love for Cyrus manifests itself as hatred, jealousy and rage. The comparable figures in Cassandre, Roxane and Perdicas, had appeared as villains because their passions were out of control : it was in fact the gods themselves who made them slaves to their passions so that they lost their judgement and received their due punishment as a result. Thomiris on the other hand is treated with a degree of sympathy because the power of her passions is recognised as being outside her control.

In general, however, a distinction is noticeable between the main plot, in which reason is the central principle behind the heroic actions, and many of the subsidiary episodes in which externally noble and striking characters prove to be motivated by emotions over which they have no control. The distinction is accentuated by the development in the subsidiary episodes of an alternative interpretation of the values of heroism, redefined in accordance with the kind of world in which the stories are set, namely a refined circle of courtiers, dominated by the female characters, in which the encounters are verbal and emotional rather than physical. Social graces are here more important than a martial air.

The redefinition of the heroic virtues is the more evident because of Madeleine de Scudéry's practice of providing portraits of the major characters introduced into the episodes, in which their heroic qualities are enumerated

43. IV,6 ; cf. IV,1223, X,1247-50.
44. VI,525 ; cf. VI,969-70, VII,658.
45. Cassandre, X,997.
and explained. 6 Gloire and générosité are attributed to male and female characters alike but are very different from the virtues Oroondate would have understood. Cléonisbe loves gloire more than herself; she is généreuse, 'de la derniere générosité' and has 'le coeur Grand, ferme & tout à fait Heroïque', but the major feature of her heroic nature is her great sense of pity and her tender kindness. 47 Onésile's qualities are all overshadowed by her générosité which makes her render services to all those of vertu, beyond anything expected of her: 'qui que ce soit n'a jamais sêeu obliger d'une maniere plus noble, plus desin­teressée, ny plus Heroïque.' 48 Philoxène loves her gloire and is noted for her tenderness and her loyalty towards her friends: she is sociable and her virtue is 'ny sauvage, ny austere.' 49

The générosité of which these ladies are possessed is a concern for the welfare and the happiness of others. Their gloire is a concern for their reputation, not the reputation to be gained by seeking out danger but the one which accompanies a virtuous life and is subject to attack by slander. It cannot be fought for except by the constant repelling of any threat which might give slander a chance, by the maintenance of a strict bienséance and honnêteté. 50

The emphasis has shifted from those virtues in the heroic spectrum which raise the hero above his fellow-men to those which bind him more closely to them - kindness, loyalty to friends, sympathy. There are two which were scarcely relevant to the novels committed to endless military actions and duels but which are here particularly emphasised, viz. liberality and modesty. Modesty fulfills a special function in that it prevents the person of superior qualities from losing sight of the obligations which bind all men together. It is a corrective to the natural tendency to develop an inflated view of one's own

46. This type of portrait does not appear in the earlier volumes.
47. VIII,705-6.
48. IX,553-4.
49. VII,1243-4; cf. VIII,696.
50. See Noromate's discourse on gloire in women: IX,350-1.
capacity which in its turn breaks down the solidarity on which society should be based. Péranius is an outstanding man, valiant, jealous of his gloire, liberal and généreux, but his greatest quality is that he prefers to praise others rather than be praised himself, possessing to a high degree 'cette modestie qui est une marque infaillible de la valeur heroïque.' Pisistrate on the other hand, despite being loyal, liberal, courageous and généreux, is somewhat too attached to his own opinions and falls short of heroic status. In women, modesty reveals itself in the opinion they have of their beauty or, with women like Alcione and Sapho, of their wit and learning.

Where modesty serves to maintain homogeneity in a society, liberality, mentioned as a virtue in connection with all the major characters in the novel, helps to set apart within the group those who possess supreme qualities. By showing generosity towards his friends and acquaintances, the hero brings them nearer to him but at the same time raises himself morally above them, having the same effect as clemency in the military hero. Liberality is a heroic virtue, according to Parthénie. 'Qui n'est point liberal, n'est point généreux', declares Doralise and she explains that valour, kindness, prudence and wisdom can be found in all sorts of men but, for liberality, 'je ne voy que cette vertu toute seule, par où les Grands puissent raisonnablement s'eslever au dessus des autres.'

The effect of this new interpretation of heroism on the subject-matter of the novel can be seen in several of the episodes, such as the 'Histoire d'Elise'. Elise herself has the same charismatic quality as the great military heroes, striking those who see her with her quasi-divine

51. VIII,616-9, 823.
52. IX,930.
53. III,1111-2, X,557-66. Sapho is, of course, Madeleine de Scudéry herself. Her brother (Charaxe) is treated with less sympathy. He has courage 'mais c'est de celuy qui rend les Taureaux plus vaillans que les Cerfs : & non pas de cette espece de courage que l'on confond quelquefois avec la générosité' (X,566).
54. VI,407.
55. V,225, 227.
56. VII,214-582. According to the key to Cyrus, Elise is Madeleine de Scudéry's close friend, Mlle Paulet.
air so that they are drawn to her: 'elle a si bien sceu accorder la fierté & la modestie dans son coeur, qu'il en resulte je ne sceu quoy de Grand & de Divin dans tous ses mouvemens, qui la rend infinitement aimable.' 57 She does not of course use her charisma to inspire men in battle, but it has the same effect of setting her apart from those around: it is 'je ne sceu quoy de divin, qui separe celles qui l'ont du reste du monde: qui les fait craindre & respecter de ceux qui les aiment: & qui sans faire incivilite à personne, fait toutesfois qu'on ne se familiarise jamais trop avec celles qui ont cette aimable fierté.' 56

It is fierté she has, not orgueil. On the contrary, 'elle n'a pas seulement de l'humilité, elle a encore de la modestie.' 59 Her heroic manner hides a heart full of goodness and tenderness, especially towards her friends to whom she is absolutely loyal. She resists any threat to her gloire as firmly as any male hero, not by direct action but by reacting sharply to any suggestion which might affect her reputation as a virtuous woman. 60 Throughout the episode, she is a model of heroic virtue, admired by others and displaying 'une fermeté incroyable' in the face of affliction. 61 As she lies dying, the whole court treats her as the moral power in their society. She comforts her sorrowing friends with 'une tendresse genereuse, qui ne s'exprima point par des larmes, & qui ne l'obligea pas à donner aucune marque de foiblesse.' 62 She counsels the king, 'l'exhortant à estre juste; à estre clement; à estre liberal; à aimer ses Peuples; & à ne se laisser jamais gouverner par ses passions.' 63

57. VII, 575.
58. VII, 294.
59. VII, 247.
60. " As when Asiadate offers to help her financially during a period of hardship (VII, 477-83).
61. VII, 589.
62. VII, 590.
63. VII, 592.
Elise and other characters like her are the incarnation of a heroic ideal offered to the polite society of the Fronde period as an alternative to the militaristic heroes of earlier novels. Elise is not inferior to Cyrus, 'dont les Conquestes sont encore plus grandes que celles d'Elise': she is different. She is heroic because she has the qualities which enable her to stand out as a moral force in the society in which she lives, to champion and exemplify the standards of bienséance and self-control necessary in a compact group such as a court. In short, she is heroic because she is a model of honnêteté.

The heroic novel had been propagating the ideals of honnêteté throughout its existence and had reflected closely the increasing influence of feminism. In Antiope and Rosane, it had been possible for characters to discuss the need for honnêteté: is the apparent dissimulation involved in civility not fundamentally dishonest and therefore unheroic? why should we be modest about something we know to be praiseworthy? In Le Grand Cyrus, such questions are assumed to have been answered. The hero accepts the rules of society unhesitatingly while never losing sight of the reasons why they are necessary. Since his heroic status depends partly on his impeccable behaviour in society, however, he ceases to be a man apart in the tradition of earlier heroes. Pacore in Alcide, Cyrus in Axiane, Pyrrhus in Mitridate - these had all been brought up away from civilisation, developing the simple heroic virtues with which nature had endowed them and which allowed them to move naturally into a position of authority when they were eventually introduced into society. The world of courtiers had tended to be depicted as an unheroic place, the haunt of devious favourites and dangerous courtesans, often hostile to the hero's straightforward values. The new hero is expected not only to live in a society of (virtuous) courtiers

64. VII, 581-2.
65. See above, Chapter V.
66. Antiope, IV, 136 et seq.
67. Rosane, p. 409 et seq.
but to excel in it by his 'air galant', a 'je ne sçay quoy ...
qui naist de cent choses differentes.' This is something which can only partially be a gift of nature, for
'il faut de plus que le grand commerce du monde, & du monde
de la Cour, aide encore à le donner: & il faut aussi que
la conversation des Femmes le donne aux hommes.' 68 Not
everyone born with great qualities will achieve it 69 and
no man can acquire it without cultivating the opposite sex.
He must show that he responds with sensibility to their
charms and at some stage of his life should fall in love.
The rugged virtues of 'ces hommes de fer & de sang, qui
passent toute leur vie à la guerre : ou de ces Chasseurs
determinez, qui sont tousjours dans des forests' 70 are no
longer sufficient. They need to be made sociable by love
and brought back from the rarefied atmosphere in which the
ethic of aristocratic individualism had set them. The
heroic aureole is now reserved for the man who fits best
into society rather than the one who stands above it. He
needs to be 'aimable' and 'honnête': his charisma is his
'air galant':

ce je ne sçay quoy galant, qui est
respendu en toute la personne qui le
possède, soit en son esprit, en ses
paroles, en ses actions, ou même en
ses habillements, est ce qui acheve les
honnестes Gens, ce qui les rend aimable,
& ce qui les fait aimer. 71

The love he is required to experience is not the con-
fused passion which takes away all moral sense. Such
emotions are to be avoided as far as possible by following
the precepts of amitié tendre (or amitié héroïque 72), a
relationship which retains the pleasures of conversation
and galanterie while stopping short of any involvement
which might upset the emotional equilibrium of the couple.
At the court of Cyprus, where the laws of Venus Urania are
observed, 'les amours permises sont des amours si purs,

68. X,888.
69. X,891.
70. V,57.
71. X,892.
72. VII,1127.
si innocentes, si détachées des sens, & si esloignées du crime, qu'il semble qu'elle n'ait permis d'aimer les autres, que pour se rendre plus aimable soi-même, par le soing que l'on apporte à mériter la véritable gloire, à acquérir la politesse, & à tâcher d'avoir cet air galant & agréable dans la conversation, que l'amour seulement peut inspirer.\textsuperscript{73} No demands are made of the loved one, no pain is felt from jealousy. Yet amitié tendre brings with it a level of disinterested feeling which can nullify the extremes of emotion to which man is subject and leave him free to exploit his heroic potential. It is 'la chose du monde la plus innocente, la plus juste, la plus douce, & ... la plus Heroïque. ... C'est sans doute l'amitié qui adoucit toutes les douleurs, qui redouble tous les plaisirs, qui fait que dans les plus grandes misères, on trouve de la consolation & du secours : & c'est elle enfin, qui a fait faire mille actions Heroïques par toute la Terre.'\textsuperscript{74} It does not demand grand gestures and enormous sacrifices. It is a relationship which needs the stability of a settled society and thrives on day-to-day attentiveness : 'ce sont les petites choses qui font les grandes amitiés.'\textsuperscript{75}

The heroic ideal which Madeleine de Scudéry formulates in Le Grand Cyrus thus negates many of the features previously considered essential in the hero. The moral freedom which the hero had striven to maintain has been rendered nugatory by the fact that the passions are now seen to be stronger than the will. To be separated from the rest of mankind is no longer required of him. He needs to be a full member of society and indeed cannot become properly heroic unless he has absorbed the manners and attitudes of the group to which he belongs. He is admirable because he reinforces the social norms, not because he transcends them. Great love and devotion for a lady, one of the most

\textsuperscript{73.} II,897-8 ; cf. VI,113 et seq. \textsuperscript{74.} VII,1128-9. \textsuperscript{75.} X,1161.
important aspects of the traditional heroic ideal, is now suspect since the passions are potentially dangerous and can lead to situations beyond the control of even the most heroic person. Preference is given to alternative kinds of relationship, based on tendresse, estime and 'les petits soins & tous les petits devoirs de l'amitié.'

Much of this new heroic ideal is expounded in a tentative way, becoming increasingly affirmative as the novel progresses. The result is an ambivalence running throughout the work. On the one hand, Cyrus perpetuates much of the received tradition, being a man of insuperable will-power, devoting all his energies to the heroic service of Mandane, recognised by all as specially marked out among men to live and love in an incomparable way; on the other hand, many characters are depicted as heroic according to the ideal formulated by préciosité, stressing the virtues necessary in a refined society, concerned with what makes men more alike rather than with what distinguishes them. The ambivalence is left unresolved although clearly, if the précieux view of the individual is accepted, the traditional ideal cannot be held to be valid since its premises are incompatible with those of préciosité.

Le Grand Cyrus represents the final metamorphosis of the heroic novel. The prose-epic form ostensibly recounting the heroic deeds of a great figure is here used as a framework on which to hang a large number of subsidiary episodes reflecting a concept of man and an ideal very different from those for which the form was created. In Clélie, the process is completed: the form is still retained but little attempt is made to hide the fact that the heroic element has become an empty convention: 'sous des apparences semblables, le roman héroïque était devenu un roman bourgeois.'

76. X, 1160.
PART III
The analysis of the major heroic novels in Part II shows that any attempt to establish a definition of heroism covering the whole corpus of heroic novels between 1630 and 1660 risks masking as many important aspects as it illuminates. The heroic ideal embodied in the major novels changed so radically that the only features which can be seen as constants are the more obvious ones, such as a commitment to love.

**Polexandre**, the first of the major novels, reflects a very personal concept of heroism, based on a largely pessimistic view of human nature, in opposition to that of the majority of such authors. In Gomberville's vision, man as a species is subject to the tyranny of the passions. Love in particular can be a disastrous experience, striking him down like a plague: there is nothing that can be done to prevent its attacks or, in the main, to cure them. There are, however, certain individuals who have been endowed with a will strong enough to overcome the passions and who can therefore succeed in living according to the *généreux* precepts of altruistic heroism, to be admired by the majority of mankind. Within this group of specially favoured beings, there are some whose heroism is even more refined. They are the elect: they have had a heroic destiny visited upon them and must respond to the call, regardless of whether they feel adequate to it or not. Everything with them is subordinated to the pursuit of the highest virtue.

Heroic destiny in **Polexandre** is thus not dependent on the individual's own wishes. However hard he tries, he will not be able to reach heroic status unless he is blessed...
with the requisite "grace". *Ibrahim*, in contrast, holds out to everyone the chance to achieve heroism. The world from which Justinian emerges is only a short way removed from that in which the average reader would have felt at home. His virtues are those to which all could aspire—loyalty, a strong sense of honour, firmness, fairness. His is essentially an imitable form of heroism, inspiring the reader to adopt the same standards of *honnêteté* and altruism.

*Cassandre* ignores questions of ultimate moral responsibility, depicting an ideal of absolute individual freedom, such as the *noblesse d'épée* claimed as their own. Everything the hero does is assessed in terms of his fidelity to his image of himself: all other obligations, including those towards his king and country, are secondary to it. Even love has to be subordinated to self-interest and can only be acknowledged when the demands of *gloire* have been satisfied. In him, pride and self-reliance are admirable, the urge to self-aggrandisement is glorious, but the moral dangers inherent in such an attitude are assumed not to exist.

In *Cléopâtre*, however, a moral contradiction becomes apparent. The heroic characters still see themselves as responsible only to their private image, but they have in fact lost the power to control their own destiny because their will can no longer be relied upon to direct their passions. Since they cannot guarantee to impose themselves on every situation that confronts them, they have lost the moral autonomy so prized by Oroondate. The moral leadership has passed to the women who, with their strong sense of *bienséance*, are more capable of controlling their passions. The hero/heroine relationship is no longer one of moral equality with each partner ensuring that his or her own pride is satisfied. The deference and service which the hero had previously devoted to his lady as an indication of his honest intentions have been replaced by subjection. He has no rights, can make no claims but can only hope that he will not be considered too unworthy of her.
Le Grand Cyrus confirms that the passions can oblige even heroic individuals to act against their reason and illustrates the complexities of emotion with which men and women have to struggle. The possibility that a being might exist whose will could control his passions is not excluded, though a comparison with Clélie suggests that Cyrus is depicted as such a being because he was originally envisaged by the author as a reincarnation of Croondate, rather than because Scudéry shared Gomberville's belief in a "chosen" heroic few, exempt from the weaknesses found in other men. Le Grand Cyrus offers an ideal of restrained social behaviour and amitié tendre as a defence against the potential tyranny of the passions.

Heroism as it appeared in the major novels was the product of the society for which it was created. The readers expected to find confirmed in these novels the pattern of behaviour which they imagined as their ideal, and novelists consequently offered an increasingly bourgeois interpretation of heroism to match the change from aristocratic individualism in 1640 to the world of the financiers and their wives in 1655. Having demonstrated its ability to keep pace with the changing ethos during the period of the Fronde, the heroic novel nonetheless declined rapidly around 1660. The possible reasons for its eclipse will be considered in the following chapter.
CHAPTER XIII
Decline

The heroic novel seems to have fallen from popularity with remarkable rapidity. During the 1650s, Scudéry and La Calprenède had produced some of their most successful works and looked ready to continue writing well into the 1660s, but Almahide (1660-63) and Faramond (1661-63) were their last efforts respectively in this style. In a letter dated 15th December 1663, Chapelain commented that the public's taste had forsaken novels 'qui sont tombés avec La Calprenède' and now favoured 'les voyages'. One of the characters in La Promenade de Saint-Cloud (1669), boasting that he had never read a novel, declares 'je me réjouis tous les jours de ce que le siècle commence à s'en dégoûter.' The abbé de Villars, writing admiringly of Madame de La Fayette's Princesse de Montpensier (1662), remarked 'on a vu cesser tout à coup cette ardeur qu'on avoit pour les Romans.' In 1683, Du Plaisir commented that 'les petites Histoires ont entièrement détruit les grands Romans.' Some sixty years later, Lenglet Dufresnoy affirmed that the writing, though not the reading, of these long novels had ceased about 1660.

Certainly, the 1660s saw an abrupt drop in the number of heroic novels produced and a corresponding increase in nouvelles, a form which became increasingly popular and which within a few years had eclipsed the longer novel.

---

1. On these two works, see J.W. Schweitzer, Georges de Scudéry's Almahide: Authorship, Analysis, Sources and Structure (Baltimore, 1939); S. Pitou, La Calprenède's Faramond: a Study of the Sources, Structure and Reputation of the Novel (Baltimore, 1938). Schweitzer makes a convincing case for Georges de Scudéry as the sole author of Almahide.


Deloffre affirms that the first sign of the revolution in the narrative genre was the proliferation of nouvelles round about 1660. Such an immediately perceptible change has encouraged explanations based on simple cause and effect: since the nouvelle was short, concentrated and often based on relatively recent history, it is assumed that the public must have grown tired of the opposite qualities in the heroic novel:

Lorsqu'on s'aperçut que les longs Romans fatiguaient la patience des Lecteurs François, on imagina les Nouvelles historiques; et leur succès a été si complet, qu'elles ont fait disparaître les grands Romans.

The generation which had written and enjoyed the long romans was growing old; the new generation would be oriented toward the principles of classicism - concision, simplicity, purity of organisation. Superficially at least, the nouvelles seem closer to realising neo-classical ideals than do the romans.

It is probably true that the reading public was growing weary of the way each new novel repeated the same stereotyped situations and indulged in conventionalised sentiments. This is not to say, however, that a sudden reaction in favour of 'realism' necessarily set in, for the heroic novel had been successfully outstripping its less idealistic competitors for some time.

Throughout the period of its vitality, the heroic novel coexisted with two other forms of prose fiction, shorter and, relatively speaking, more realistic than it. One such form related adventures not dissimilar to those found in the heroic novel but made no attempt to raise the characters to a higher moral plane than that on which

5. Quoted by Coulet, op.cit., II, 88.
the reader might be expected to exist. Such works, many of them inspired by Spanish originals, therefore depended on the interest aroused by the episodes of the plot rather than on the moral quality of the characters. Le Roman véritable, for instance, is made up of a series of stories linked by the appearance of the main characters in each one. The settings are realistic in so far as they are Spanish rather than taken from far off lands and ages. The characters are sufficiently noble to know the correct way to behave but are not preoccupied with générosité or with galanterie. They are direct and forthright; they become involved in brawls and have to hide from the law; they avoid over-refined concepts of love. Particularly noticeable is the fact that the style is not inflated as it so often was in the heroic novel. It contains no unnecessary superlatives, no over-loaded sentence structures, no involved compliments. The anonymous author is concerned to tell a story and considers his task accomplished if the story is transmitted as directly and as economically as possible. The four stories published by Boisrobert in 1657 offer the same combination of romanesque incidents and 'realistic' characters, containing, despite their collective title, nothing heroic in the sense implied in the heroic novel. Segrais' Nouvelles françaises are likewise based on incidents very similar to those found in the heroic novels—abductions, chance meetings, etc.—but avoid the worst of the conventions associated with the latter.

The other form of more realistic novel took its subject-matter from ordinary life and depicted entirely contemporary characters in recognisable settings. Polyandre deals with financiers, rowdy aristocrats, précieuses, arguments over the function of poetry and the difficulty in finding patrons, Le Roman comique with the realities of

10. Le Roman véritable, où sous des noms et des pays empruntés, dans un enchaînement agréable, sont comprises les Histoires et aventures amoureuses de plusieurs personnes de condition, tant dedans que dehors le Royaume, 2 vols. (Paris, 1645).
life in the provinces, the problems besetting travelling actors, brawls in taverns.

The heroic novel occasionally ventured into this less idealised area and devoted an episode or two to a more recognisably real world, stripped of magnificence and exotic trappings. The story of the Marquis français (le Feint Astrologue) in *Ibrahim* makes no attempt to hold up a mode of behaviour for the reader's admiration or to show the workings of the human emotions but merely relates the amusing consequences of a white lie. Bonnet breaks the heroic atmosphere of *Bérenger* at one point by including a pirate who regales the company with earthy stories and sings a drinking-song. The first volume of *Le Tolédan* is suffused with a picaresque tone which prevents a genuinely heroic aura from being built up around the central character. The author apologises for it in Volume II, blaming it on his Spanish source, and promises that subsequent volumes will contain far less of it.

If some of the writers of heroic novels felt free to move away from the traditional heroic material and introduce a more realistic element into their works from time to time, the writers of 'realistic' novels did not see their primary function as the negative one of satirising the more cumbersome long novels. Neither Sorel nor Scarron wrote specifically to parody the heroic novel in the way that Sorel had set out to ridicule the pastoral in *Le Berger extra-vagant* or Du Verdier the romance of chivalry in *Le Chevalier hypocondriaque*. To a certain extent, Sorel had a polemic intention in writing *Polyandre*, since he was opposed to those who maintained that only the adventures of kings and queens were of any interest, but apart from a number of satirical remarks about high-flown declarations of love,

---

13. *Ibrahim*, II, Book VII. The story is borrowed from Calderon.
17. *e.g.* I, 51-61, 81-82.
he does not attempt to score points at the expense of the heroic novel. Scarron certainly makes explicit his impatience with the clichés of character and plot associated with the heroic novel and the brawls in Le Roman comique are no doubt intended as satirical comments on the heroic encounters described by La Calprenède and Scudéry, but there is no attempt to offer a 'realistic' alternative to romanesque conventions. Indeed, the Roman comique is dependent on many of the same conventions as the heroic novel. Nor can the vogue for burlesque verse which developed after the publication of Scarron's Typhon in 1644 to reach a peak in about 1650 be presented as a primarily anti-heroic phenomenon, for the majority of burlesque versions of heroic works published around 1650 leave their subject-matter substantially untouched and concentrate on the form of expression. As the titles of many of them suggest, the burlesque was normally concerned with travesty rather than parody, that is, it related the deeds and words of ostensibly great and dignified personages in the lowest form of everyday speech rather than inventing different circumstances for the personages to appear in, as parody would have done.

Most burlesque writers took an established heroic or legendary theme and travestied it by replacing the more elevated verse form with an octosyllabic line, using large numbers of archaisms, neologisms, popular and lewd expressions and academic words used in an incongruous context. Beneath the layer of ribaldry and linguistic inventiveness, Dassoucy's Ovide en belle humeur straightforwardly recounts the Metamorphoses. His Poésies et lettres contain a large number of vers héroiques, couched in superlatives and addressed to the great military leaders of the day, followed by a number

---

of vers burlesques, flattering the same noble figures but using everyday language in octosyllables instead of alexandrines. Lengthy passages of the Arioste travesty contain nothing which could not be taken for a genuine rendering of the original with a little ribaldry added. Picou, in his Odyssee d'Homere, maintains a balanced, straightforward style with only the occasional reference to everyday objects and little that seems intended to make the reader laugh: his only ambition would appear to be to recount the fidelity of Penelope while avoiding the poetic diction usually employed for this sort of work, in the belief that 'souvent une simplicité naïve n'a pas moins d'agrément qu'un langage poly & des termes bien choisis.'

The admiration accorded to Scarron was earned largely by his skill in manipulating the verse-form and vocabulary associated with the burlesque. Those who praise him do not suggest that he had demolished the heroes of the ancient world in his Virgile travesty but merely that he had made them more accessible, providing 'des graces folâtres & goguenardes' in place of Virgil's 'beautez graves & serieuses':

Ce n'est pas que Virgile en sa façon d'écrire N'ait acquis de la Gloire, & n'ait beaucoup d'honneur, Ses grands Vers empoulez ont bien quelque vigueur, Mais un bon trait une mieux que tout ce qu'on peut dire.

Some observers make the point explicitly that the subject-matter of the works travestied was not affected, since 'les Vers Burlesques different seulement en façons de parler & de langage, de ceux dont les phrases & stances sont hautes, graves & serieuses : car le mesme Poême peut estre grave ou

22. Poesies et lettres, contenant diverses pieces heroïques, satiriques et burlesques (Paris, 1653). The same is true of the Poesies diverses of both François Colletet (Paris, 1656) and Brébeuf (Paris, 1658). Brébeuf in particular shows himself to be capable of delicacy and galanterie in his burlesque verses, the only identifiable burlesque elements being the octosyllabic line and a certain lightness of touch.


25. Guéret, Le Parnasse reformé, p. 27.

burlesque, en changeant seulement les façons de parler.'27

Writers of burlesque works, too, sometimes declared their intention of not interfering with the heroic material they had borrowed. Nouguier openly states his aim of relating his chosen epic theme without any attempt at parody, restricting any burlesque comments to the level of digressions:

J'entends peut-être dire à quelque curieux,
Que pour être Burlesque il est trop sérieux ;
Et qu'il faut dans le champ de la bouffonnerie,
Que de trois en trois pas à tout le moins on rie :
Bon, pour quelque dessein à sa porte estallé,
Pour dire à son plaisir comme tout est allé,
Pour ab hoc, & ab hac, debiter une fable :
Mais dedans le tissu d'un narré veritable,
Il faut que les succès (par l'Histoire apprenez)
Soient purement deduits, comme ils sont arrivéz.
On peut bien sans reproche, & sans perdre son Curse,
Faire de-ça de-là quelque agréable course,
Pour trouver son Burlesque, & luy rendre tribut ;
Mais s'y faut-il toujours revenir à son but,
Cotter les accidents attachez à l'essence :
Ainsi par les détours d'une douce prudence,
On pourra par l'effet d'un coup industrieux,
Divertir le folatre, & plaire au serieux.28

He manipulates his epic material skilfully, retaining an obvious affection for it. Scarron himself promised to demonstrate to the Prince of Orange that his burlesque muse 'peut traiter comiquement un sujet heroïque sans le prophaner.'29

It is difficult to accept therefore that the heroic novel suffered as a result of comparisons made with ostensibly more realistic and hence anti-heroic forms of writing. It should be remembered that some of the most successful of the heroic novels were published after Polyandre, Le Roman comique and the bulk of the burlesque works. If satirical comments about the lack of verisimilitude in the heroic novel came to be seen as arrows in the corpse of heroism, it must have been that the giant was already dying.30

28. Œuvres burlesques (Orange, 1650), pp. 59-60.
It is true that the heroic novel had begun to lose its vigour. There are indications in novels of the late 1640s and the 1650s that some authors, while continuing to use the forms and conventions established in the 1630s, had lost much of their interest in the heroic subject-matter. They would construct a skeletal plot around a set of historical incidents and allow it to develop very slowly but the majority of the novel would be devoted to episodes of galanterie or discussions on abstract points of love. Sorel, as usual, was aware of the change:

Toutes leurs avantures ne sont pas Heroyques ny guerrières; entre plusieurs Tomes d'un Roman, on en void quelques-uns de tres gros qui ne contiennent pas trois feuilles où il soit parlé du Heros principal, n'estant employez qu'à des Histoires destachées lesquelles ne sont aucunement du sujet, & ne sont remplies que de folles amour-ettes & de cageolleries ou galanteries assez basses, ... . Cela est fort indigne de ce stile Heroyque que les Autheurs se proposent.  

Le Grand Cyrus adopted such a pattern in its later volumes. Hermiogène relates the events leading up to the assassination of Julius Caesar but depicts Roman society as a world in which civility and form are more important than power and politics. Clorinde has virtually no main plot: the tiroirs are set against a background of military action (Pompey's wars against Mithridates and the Roman campaigns in Judaea) but no individuals emerge and episodes involving fighting are passed over quickly. On the other hand, the emotional subjugation of men to women is detailed in numerous different forms, with the strictest severity as the norm. The wicked pirate, Métraphane, has Agiatis in his power but quails before her:

Vous estes toujours inhumaine, ...
belle Agiatis ! & vous prenez plaisir
à juger du pouvoir que vous avez sur
moy par mon insensibilité aux offenses
que vous me faites. Elles sont bien

32. See above, Chapter XII.  
33. Only Part I was published.  
34. Clorinde, I,345-6, 465, 595-6.
dures, ces rigoureuses épreuves que vous me faites souffrir, & à tout autre qu'à moy elles seroient insupportables, etc. 35

Le Tolédan creates a world of social sophistication in the main plot; what heroics there are are restricted to the subsidiary episodes and contrast so noticeably with the overall tone of restraint and refinement that at times it seems as though the author is parodying the heroic style. 36

Clélie takes the same principles to much greater lengths. The portraits of the authoress's friends and the discussions on the metaphysics of love have left no scope for heroic material: the figures intended to justify the epic structure are reduced to the size of courtiers, 'Caton galant et Brutus dameret.' The argument put forward in Volume VIII for a moral concept of the novel is an attempt by Madeleine de Scudéry to justify retaining the form of the heroic novel while jettisoning the breadth of vision and imaginative power which had established that form. The list of essential features in a novel given by Anacreon is such that it does not require an author to include any heroic incidents or glorify human endeavour at all in his work: it is necessary to include realistic details of the society depicted and 'que les passions y soient bien dépeintes, que les aventures soient naturelles, & sagement inventées, que toutes les petites choses qui font connoistre le fond du coeur de tous les hommes, y soient placées à propos, que le vice y soit blâmé, & la vertu recompensée, que la diversité y regne sans confusion, que l'imagination y soit tousjours soumise au jugement, que les evenemens extraordinaires y soient bien fondez, qu'il y ait du savoir sans affectation, que la galanterie soit par tout où il en faut, que le stile n'en soit ni trop eslevé ni trop bas, & qu'en nul endroit la bien-seance ni les bonnes moeurs n'y soient blessées.' 37

35. id., I,354.
36. See the naval battle, III,622-3.
Madeleine de Scudéry and those for whom she wrote her *Clélie* were rapidly losing interest in the heroic myth. The question remains, however, why the heroic novel which had been enormously popular and which had demonstrated its ability to adapt itself to new demands and attitudes on the part of its readers should suddenly, so soon after the appearance of some of the weightiest examples of the form, cease to fulfil any need and be replaced by a kind of fiction apparently so unlike it. The answer is complex and involves social, economic and political factors as well as literary. The effects of the Fronde and the loss of the aristocracy's special position; the emergence of a dominant new class of financiers with very different values; the strongly feminist trend in society with a consequent shift from individual to collective virtues: these made the hero as postulated in the days of Richelieu appear out of touch with the realities of life, but the factor which seems to have had the greatest effect was the erosion of the assumptions about the nature of man necessary for a belief in heroism. The ideological movement of the time was such that the concept of free will, essential to a belief in the heroic potential of man, was giving way to a deterministic view according to which man was conditioned by forces over which he had no control, though differences of religious and political standpoint resulted in divergent interpretations of the nature of these forces and conflicting assessments of man's relationship to them.

Bénichou has argued the existence of a strain of aggressive moral pessimism during the years following the Fronde, based more or less explicitly on Jansenist theology. The will-power and reason which had made man master of himself as a preliminary to becoming master of the universe gave way before a host of uncontrollable factors - physiological functions, humours, habits, heredity. The "demolition of the hero" undertaken by La Rochefoucauld,
Pascal, Esprit and others is 'une entreprise dirigée contre l'idéalisme': the heroic virtues are picked off one by one and redefined in terms of self-interest and vanity, to the point where those who insist on affirming the old values are simply illustrating man's inability to see beyond appearances. Heroism is the discredited remnant of a lost age: 'L'homme n'est pas grand. Le désir qu'il a de se grandir ne le grandit pas. Telles sont les deux vérités sous lesquelles doit succomber la morale glorieuse.'

Bénichou's thesis has been considered too narrow to do justice to the complexity of the ideologies of the time. The modification to it proposed by Professor Sutcliffe traced the concern with the nature of heroism beyond a simple aristocratic/Jansenist dualism and demonstrated how the fundamental concepts of heroism were reinterpreted by some of the writers closest to the centre of political power. Stegmann, having identified in L'Héroïsme cornélien a number of trends which contributed to Corneille's heroic vision, has since shown that for every move towards a heroic ideal there was a corresponding question raised about it:

La démolition du héros est de toutes les époques : elle est particulièrement vivace dans la production littéraire française sous Louis XIII.

Professor Levi has provided further insights into the disappearance of heroism. Investigating why the authors most in touch with their generation should have given up examining the conditions necessary for the existence of heroism in favour of an analysis of the nature of affective experience, he suggests that it was not specifically the Jansenists who rejected the moral greatness implied in heroism: La Rochefoucauld went further than they in that he denied man any sort of moral self-determination. There

39. In Guez de Balzac et son temps.
40. 'L'Ambiguïté du concept héroïque dans la littérature morale en France sous Louis XIII', Héroïsme et création littéraire... p. 30.
was an increasing awareness that all human behaviour was framed within a moral ambiguity which brought into question the nature, and indeed the existence, of virtue, since actions were no guarantee that the motive behind them was virtuous. Professor Levi traces this awareness through the 1640s, when for instance the fundamental optimism of Le Cid gave way to the ambiguous heroism of Rodogune, into the 1650s and concludes that a possible starting-point for the loss of confidence in man's moral being was the discovery of the overwhelming irrational force of love:

La disparition de l'héroïsme est étroitement liée au décalage entre héroïsme et vertu, qui s'est accentué entre 1630 et 1660 jusqu'au moment où La Rochefoucauld précise la nature du dilemme qui s'ensuit. Mais pourquoi, en fin de compte, les valeurs morales examinées dans le contexte de l'héroïsme se détachèrent-elles de la vertu ? Pourquoi un optimisme trop appuyé, une foi illimitée en l'instinct comme guide pour la vertu, un enthousiasme quelquefois puéril, ont-ils provoqué une méfiance qui a abouti à une rupture quasi totale entre les actions humaines et les valeurs vraiment personnelles ? Ne serait-il pas possible que le caractère irrésistible de l'amour y fût pour quelque chose ?

The importance of the change in the concept of love is confirmed by the heroic novel. The principal changes in the major novels specified in Part II above and reflected in lesser works can be traced back to the movement away from a belief in the supremacy of the will, with its consequent revelation of the power of involuntary love. The novels of the 1630s and early 1640s had assumed that man had free will and that the pursuit of virtue raised no problems for those who were prepared to allow their will to operate unimpeded. Novels such as Histoire celtique, Ibrahim, Scanderberg and Antiope are in a sense hymns to the potential of human will-power, showing the greatest of men harnessing the energy released by their passions.

41. 'La Disparition de l'héroïsme : étapes et motifs', Héroïsme et création littéraire ..., pp. 87-88.
and directing it towards the goal dictated by reason. Villains are those in whom the passions are stronger than the will and who are thus driven on by irrational forces.

Cassandre and the novels inspired by it such as Alcide and Bérenger already offer an alternative view. Here love is shown to be an extension of amour de soi, ultimately dependent like gloire on self-interest, and the vertu which is the hero's object is dissociated from the idea of altruism to become an embodiment of the urge to self-aggrandisement, like the virtù of Machiavelli. Such a development corresponds to the first stage of the disappearance of heroism identified by Levi, i.e. the discovery that heroism is not necessarily virtuous, perceptible in Corneille's Horace and taken to its logical conclusion in Rodogune. Cassandre glorifies human endeavour but prescribes no limits to the area in which egocentric heroism should operate and offers no warning about the existence of socially-based moral imperatives. In view of this, it is curious that the novel never went on to investigate the corollary illuminated by Corneille in Rodogune and Théodore, that the pursuit of personal ideals could be heroic even if it led into crime. The novel always assumes the existence of a norm of virtuous behaviour based on the aristocratic interpretation of Christian morality. Killing is permissible but only in specific circumstances and for specific reasons: the poisoning of rivals or the obsessive pursuit of vengeance by any means are the actions of individuals whom the hero steadfastly opposes and over whom he finally triumphs.

From Cléopâtre onwards, the heroic novel is almost entirely given over to the adventures of characters whose will is subordinate to the passion of love with its irrational inclinations and its propensity to jealousy and despair. Since love had become, practically speaking, the sole motivating factor in the plot, much of the traditional material became irrelevant. Battles, duels and confrontations of générosité had been a necessary ingredient in the earlier
novels because they provided an excellent method of demonstrating how the man of will-power with his moral freedom could impose himself on life in whatever form it presented itself and create his own destiny. The pursuit of love was itself subordinate to the maintenance of moral independence. After the Fronde, when moral freedom was giving way before moral determinism, the novelist was more concerned to analyse the effects of the irresistible force of love on his characters, with particular reference to the differences in the responses made to it by the sexes. Manifestations of physical prowess were of no use in furthering this aim and consequently faded from the central position they had occupied, though, because of the epic structure of the heroic novel and its commitment to the great military leaders of the past, they could not be discarded completely. Clorinde, Clélie and similar novels manage with only a perfunctory acknowledgement of this aspect of heroism, however.

While continuing to use a form developed as a vehicle for an optimistic affirmation of man's greatness, the heroic novel had come to be an investigation of the affective side of human nature, coloured by a deterministic view of the passions. By 1660, the idea that the will was the key to an almost limitless development of man's potential had been discarded. Heroism might still be able to provide material for imaginative fiction but it had ceased to correspond to the realities of life as experienced by the post-Fronde generation, who in general were coming to share La Rochefoucauld's attitude, 'qu'à une grande vanité près, les héros sont faits comme les autres hommes.' The epic form of the novel grew more and more hollow. Madeleine de Scudéry's references in Le Grand Cyrus and Clélie to recognisable contemporary figures provided a certain renewed impetus due to novelty, but when it became apparent that the nouvelle offered a more effective form for an analysis of the passions, the heroic novel collapsed under its own weight.

CONCLUSION

'Des centaines de romans qui, de l'Astrée, nous mènent à la Princesse de Clèves, que reste-t-il que l'on puisse lire aujourd'hui?' asked Marcel Arland, offering an answer with which it is difficult to disagree: 'Quatre ou cinq œuvres, pas davantage.' The heroic novel cannot pretend to stand with the great novels of French literature, but it is of importance for the help it gives in understanding the movement of ideas in mid-seventeenth-century France. The novel did not concern itself directly with philosophy or abstract morality: it offered a diversion from everyday life to readers who wished to have their imagination stirred but at the same time, by virtue of its subject-matter, it embodied many of the attitudes, perhaps subconscious, of the reading public.

To explain why a given society should need to create a particular concept of heroism is more properly the province of the psychologist or the anthropologist than of the literary historian, but certain factors in the period under consideration can be picked out as possible stimuli towards the emphasising of heroic virtues. Attempts have been made to explain the emergence of the heroic novel in France as a response to the political circumstances of the 1630s. The Bibliothèque universelle des romans asserts that 'on aimoit tout ce cliquetis, parce qu'une fermentation générale agitait tous les cerveaux, & que les

guerres civiles allumoient dans toutes les têtes des volcans secrets. Wadsworth suggests that the progress of war in Europe caused Gomberville to increase the heroic element in each subsequent version of Polexandre. Arland refers to 'la guerre contre les protestants, la colère des grands à l'égard de Richelieu, la menace de la Maison d'Autriche' as factors in the public's preference for the heroic over the pastoral. Others have indicated socio-logical forces, the rise of the bourgeoisie with their desire to participate vicariously in an aristocratic ideal:

L'idéal de vie qui inspirait ces romans, ce mélange d'héroïsme et de galanterie répondaient aux rêves non seulement de la jeune noblesse et des officiers de nos armées, mais aussi de tant de petits bourgeois et de bourgeoises qui se représentaient sous cette forme les séductions d'une vie plus libre, plus intense et plus brillante.

France in the first half of the seventeenth century was balanced between the old order, rooted in feudalism and felt by many to be the "natural" order, and the new structure of society based on absolutist principles, limiting to a certain extent the moral freedom of the individual but offering a new sense of national solidarity. The period 1630-1660 saw particularly rapid changes in

---

2. February 1780, p. 185.
3. The Novels of Gomberville, p. 20. Polexandre certainly betrays a marked anti-Spanish feeling: see IV, 322, 356-7, 496.
4. loc. cit., p. 201.
5. Adam, L'Age classique, p. 148. The importance of interpreting heroism in relation to the society for which it is created has been stressed by Lucien Braun: 'il n'y a pas de héros sans public. Le héros existe pour une communauté d'hommes qui, dans cette promotion, fait toujours plus que de la littérature ou de la peinture: c'est grâce à cette dimension collective que se définit quelque chose comme une résonance; et par cette résonance le héros acquiert plus de réalité universelle que tel individu en chair et en os. ... Ce sont, en effet, ces communautés qui détiennent les tables de valeur définissant la magnanimité, la sublimité, le plus-que-nature. ... Le héros représente l'exaltation selon la table de valeurs d'une collectivité et d'un temps. Les époques guerrières, les époques des conflits nationaux, les époques de paix, chacune a sa table, chacune sa figure du parfait héros. ... Le héros est une garantie quand le présent ne permet plus de faire des éclats,
the social structure as interests conflicted. In 1630, the old order was still recognisable, still awaiting the most radical changes to be effected by Richelieu. By 1645, both noblesse d'épée and noblesse de robe were having to assert their values in an effort to maintain their position. By 1660, the financiers had emerged as the most dynamic element in a society which, despite its external grandeur, was essentially bourgeois.

While these changes were taking place, literature was reflecting a search for man's moral identity. The ethic of gloire, the Jansenist rejection of it and the intermediate position of the "political" writers have been well documented, but further areas where it is legitimate to talk of heroism have also been identified. Taveneaux suggests that the image of a Port-Royal 'figé de façon monolithique dans la négation de l'héroïsme' is over-simplified and that the Jansenists maintained their own heroic ideal of charity achieved through self-abnegation. Beugnot argues the existence of a type of heroism based on solitude and retreat from the world (such as that of Balzac), reflecting disenchantment with worldly vanity and corruption at court, 'un héroïsme de l'obscurité et du refus'.

The heroic novel is a factor of this search and embodies some of its complexities. What all writers of heroic novels offer is a statement of their belief in human liberty, but they do not all share the same notion of the nature of liberty. In Cassandre, Scanderberg, Alcide and Mitridate, liberty is to be found in the old ideal of self-assertion, the aspiration to sublimity; in Ibrahim, Le Grand Cyrus, Le Tolédan and Clorinde, it resides in the acceptance of ethical imperatives imposed by a refined society. For some, like Gomberville, the heroic novel was

ou quand il est gros de menaces, ou quand les actes ne permettent plus d'organiser un comportement réel, ou simplement lorsqu'il déçoit' ('Polysemie du concept de hérois', Héroïsme et création littéraire ..., pp. 24-27).

a dream of escape from 'les misères' and 'les foiblesses de la condition humaine'; for others, like Hotman de Latour, it was a lament for passing greatness; for others, like Guérin de Bouscal, it was an assertion that greatness could still exist provided the realities of the world were faced. It frequently reflects a desire to reconcile the urge to self-aggrandisement characteristic of the old order with the need for self-limitation in the new.

The various ideals of liberty propounded by individual novelists had to give way before the realisation that man's freedom was in fact restricted by his own nature. The novels of the 1650s betray the suspicion that moral values are not absolute after all and are beginning to work their way towards an assessment of what that discovery meant in terms of human aspirations. Many of La Rochefoucauld's maxims on the nature of the passions are a statement in precise terms of what the novel had been trying to express somewhat confusedly for some time.

The heroic novel never reached the point of questioning the existence of man's heroic potential (though the form in which it was depicted changed considerably). The ethos of the 1660s was less receptive to stories of supermen: as a belief in heroism in the old manner disappeared, the writing of heroic novels ceased, but the works of Gomberville, La Calprenède and Scudéry continued to be read by the generation for whom they had been a statement of faith.

---

9. cf. Balzac for whom gloire and vertu seem, in the world of his day, to be 'des phantomes de Romans, apres lesquels courent leurs Heros, qui sont d'autres spectres & d'autres phantomes' (Œuvres, II, 454).
11. e.g. 'il s'en faut bien que nous connaissions tout ce que nos passions nous font faire' (Max. 460), 'si nous résistons à nos passions, c'est plus par leur faiblesse que par notre force' (Max. 122), 'nos actions sont comme les bouts rimés, que chacun fait rapporter à ce qu'il lui plaît' (Max. 382).
BIBLIOGRAPHY

The place of publication is Paris unless otherwise stated.

A. Primary Sources

i) Manuscript material

Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal, Paris

3135, fol. 61-69  Eloge de Mr le Prince.
    fol. 69-71  Comparaison de Mr le Prince
    et Mr de Turenne.

3259, fol. 61-72  Discours des Amazones.

5416, fol. 1921-34  Manifeste du Comte de
    Soissons.

Bibliothèque Mazarine, Paris

2117, fol. 242-3  Lettre de Monsieur de Guise
    au Cardinal Mazarin.

3940  Recueil de diverses poesies
    francaises 1648.

Bibliothèque Méjanès, Aix-en-Provence

153 (502 in Catalogue général des manuscrits des
    bibliothèques publiques de France, 1894)
    Mémoires de M. Millet.

411 (115 in op.cit.)  L'Education heroïque.
    Recueillie d'un manuscrit et
    mise en lumiere par J.Ottonis,
    Chanoine de la cathedrale de
    Gand.
ii) Prose fiction


Amadis de Gaule (transl. Herberay des Essarts):
- Le Premier Livre de Amadis de Gaule. 1548.
- Le Second Livre de Amadis de Gaule. 1550.
- Le Tiers Livre de Amadis de Gaule. 1547.
- Le Quatresme Livre de Amadis de Gaule. 1555.

Axiane. 1647.

Baudoin, Jean (or Pierre de Boissat ?). Histoire negreponique contenant la vie et les amours d'Alexandre Castriot. 1631.

Boisrobert, François le Métel de. Histoire indienne d'Anaxandre et d'Orazie. 1629.

- Les Nouvelles heroïques et amoureuses. 1657.


C., M.D.L. Le Toledan. 5 vols. 1647-55.

Camus, Jean-Pierre. La Pieuse Jullie, histoire parisienne. 1625.

- L'Amphithéâtre sanglant où sont représentées plusieurs actions Tragiqques de nostre temps. 1630.


Chevreau, Urbain. Scanderberg. 2 vols. 1644.

- Hermiogene. 2 vols. 1648.

Clorinde. 2 vols. 1654.


Deschaussée, Père Calixte Auguste. Le Polémire ou l'Illustre Polonois. 1646.

Desfontaines, Nicolas-Marc. L'Illustre Amalazonthe. 1645.


- L'Ariane de Monsieur Des Marets ... De nouveau reveué, et augmentée de plusieurs Histoires par l'autheur, et enrichie de plusieurs figures. 1639.

- Rosane, histoire tirée de celle des Romains et des Peres. 1639.

Du Bail, Louis Moreau. La Cefalie. 1637.

Du Verdier, Gilbert Saulnier. Le Romant des romans où on verra
la suite et la conclusion de Don Belianis de Grèce,
du Chevalier du Soleil et des Amadis. 7 vols. 1627-29.

---------. La Sibile de Perse. 1632.

---------. Fuite de Rozalinde. 1643.


Fumée, Martin. Du vray et parfaict amour. 1612.


Gombauld, Jean Ogier de. Endimion. 1624.

Gomberville, Marin le Roy, sieur de. L'Exil de Polexandre et d'Ériclée. 1619.

---------. L'Exil de Polexandre, première partie. 1629.

---------. La Premiere (Seconde) Partie de Polexandre. 2 vols. 1632.

---------. La Premiere (-Cinquiesme) Partie de Polexandre. 5 vols. 1637.

---------. La Cythérée. 2nd edn. 4 vols. 1642.

Guérin de Bouscal, Guyon. Antiope. 4 vols. 1644.


Hotman de Latour, François. Histoire celtique où sous les noms d'Amindorix et de Calanire sont comprises les principales actions des rois et les diverses fortunes de la Gaule et de la France. 3 vols. 1634.


---------. Faramond ou l'Histoire de France. 7 vols. by La Calprenède. 1661-63.

La Mothe le Vayer fils, François. Le Parasite Hormon, histoire comique. s.l., 1650.

Lansire. La Diane desguisée. 1647.

Le Maire. La Prazimène. 4 vols. 1638-43.


Logeas, le sieur de. L'Histoire des trois frères, princes de Constantinople. 1632.

---------. Le Romant heroïque où sont contenus les memorables faits d'armes de Dom Rosidor, Prince de Constantinople. 1632.

---------. Les Travaux du prince incognu. 1634.

Mézeray, François Budes de (or Madame de Senecterre ?). *Orasie*. 4 vols. 1646.


Nouvelle Bibliothèque de campagne ou Choix d'épisodes intéressans et curieux, tiré des meilleurs romans, tant anciens que nouveaux. 3 vols. Amsterdam and Paris, 1769.


Le Roman de l'incogneu, ensemble quelques discours pour et contre les romans. 1634.

Le Roman veritable où sous des noms et des pays empruntez, dans un enchainement agréable, sont comprises les Histoires et aventures amoureuses de plusieurs personnes de condition, tant dedans que dehors le Royaume. 2 vols. 1645.


Scudéry, Georges and/or Madeleine de. *Ibrahim ou l'Illustre Bassa*. 4 vols. 1641.


---------------. *Clélie, histoire romaine*. 10 vols. 1654-60.


### iii) Other primary sources


Brantôme, Pierre de Bourdeille, sieur de. Des Dames galantes. 3 vols. (1933).

Brébeuf, Georges de. Poesies diverses. 1658.

Camus, Jean-Pierre. La Carité ou le Pourtraict de la vraye charité. 1641.

Caussin, Nicolas. La Cour sainte ou l’Institution chrestieime des grands. 1624.

Cériziers, René. Les Trois Estats de l’innocence. 3 vols. 1640.

---------. Le Philosophe françois. 3 vols. 1643.

---------. Le Heros françois ou l’Idée du grand capitaine. 1645.

---------. Le Tacite françois. 1648.


Charrier. Les Lauriers d’Enguien ou le Parfait General d’armée. 1645.

Chevreau, Urbain. L’Escole du sage où il est traicté des vertus et des vices. 1646.

---------. Le Tableau de la fortune. 1659.

---------. L’Escole du sage ou le Caractere des vertus et des vices. Lyon, 1664.

Coeffeteau, Nicolas. Tableau des passions humaines, de leurs causes et de leurs effets. 1620.

Colletet, François. Poesies diverses. 1656.

Colletet, Guillaume. Le Parnasse françois ou l’Escole des muses. 1664.

Corneille, Pierre. Théâtre complet. Ed. M.Rat. 3 vols. S.d.

Couraud, Elie. Le Heros chrétien. Angers, 1655.


Dassoucy, Charles Coypeau. Poesies et lettres, contenant diverses pieces heroiques, satiriques et burlesques. 1653.

---------. L’Ovide en belle humeur, augmenté du Rayissement de Proserpine et du Jugement de Paris. 1659.


---------. Nouveau Recueil de lettres des dames de ce temps. 3rd edn. 1642.


----------. *Elemens de la politique.* 1663.


Gerzan, François Du Soucy, sieur de. *Le Triomph de dames.* 1646.

Gomberville, Marin le Roy, sieur de. *La Doctrine des moeurs.* 1646.


Le Guerrier prudent et politique. 1643.


Langlois, François, sieur de Fancan. *Le Tombeau des romans où il est discouru I contre les romans II pour les romans.* 1626.


----------. *Les Siege, les batailles, les victoires et les triomphes de Monseigneur le Prince de Condé.* 1651.


Marandé, Léonard de. *Abbrege curieux et familier de toute la philosophie.* Lyon, 1648.

Mayerne Turquet, Louis de. *La Monarchie aristodémocratique.* 1641.


Morgues, Mathieu de. *Diverses pieces pour la defense de la Reyne Mere du Roy Tres-chrestien Louys XIII.* Antwerp, 1637.


Recueil de diverses poesies des plus celebres auteurs de ce temps. 1652.


Saint-Gabriel. Le Mérite des dames. 3rd edn. 1660.


Scarron, Paul. L'Heritier ridicule ou la Dame interessée. 1650.
Scudéry, Madeleine de. 'Discours de la gloire' in Recueil de quelques pieces de prose et de vers faits (sic) pour les prix qui avoient este proposez de la part de l'Academie Française en 1671. 1671.

Searles, C. Catalogue de tous les livres de feu M. Chaplain. Stanford, 1912.

Senault, Jean-François. De l'usage des passions. 8th edn. Lyon, 1657.


Silhon, Jean de. Le Ministre d'estat. 1665.
Sirmond, Jean. Le Coup d'estat de Louis XIII. 1631.


Sorbière, Samuel. Sorberiana. 1694.

Sorel, Charles. La Maison des jeux. 2 vols. 1657.

---------. Œuvres diverses ou Discours meslez. 1663.
---------. La Bibliothèque française. 2nd edn. 1667.
---------. De la connoissance des bons livres ou Examen de plusieurs auteurs. 1671.


Le Tresor des harangues, remonstrances et oraisons funèbres des plus grands personnages de ce temps. 1654.


Vulson de la Colombière, Marc. La Science heroïque. 1644.

---------. Le Vray Theatre d'honneur et de chevalerie ou le Miroir heroïque de la noblesse. 2 vols. 1648.
B. Secondary Sources

i) Unpublished theses


ii) Other secondary sources


------------. L'Age classique I. 1624-1660. 1968.


Bibliothèque universelle des romans, ouvrage périodique dans lequel on donne l'analyse raisonnée des romans anciens et modernes, français, ou traduits dans notre langue. 224 vols. 1775-89.


Canivet, Diane. L'Illustration de la poésie et du roman français au XVIIe siècle. 1957.

Coleman, Algermon. 'A source of Thrabim ou l'Illustre Bassa.' Romanic Review XXIX (1938) pp. 129-140.


---


---


Magné, Maurice. La Politesse mondaine et les théories de l'honnêteté en France au XVIIe siècle de 1600 à 1660. 2 vols. 1925.

---------. Le Roman français au XVIIe siècle de l'Astrée au Grand Cyrus. 1932.


Mongrédien, Georges. Madeleine de Scudéry et son salon. 1946.


Morillot, Paul. Le Roman en France depuis 1610 jusqu'à nos jours. S.d.

Nadal, Octave. Le Sentiment de l'amour dans l'oeuvre de Pierre Corneille. 1948.


Sutcliffe, F.E. *Guez de Balzac et son temps : littérature et politique.* 1959.


Treloar, Bronnie. 'Some feminist views in France in the seventeenth century.' *AUMLA* X (1959) pp. 152-159.


ABSTRACT

The thesis is primarily an investigation of the heroic ideal propounded in the novel and the relationship of that ideal to the ideological climate of the period 1630-1660.

Part I

I: The heroic novel owes much to the Greek romances, l'Astrée and Amadis de Gaule but offers a different ideal of heroism from them. The Greek romances had depicted essentially passive heroes, l'Astrée the heroism of renunciation and Amadis the heroism of physical strength and prowess. The heroic novel presents a hero whose nature is more important than his deeds though it is through his deeds that his nature is manifested. He exists at a higher level than the rest of mankind and is an incarnation of moral freedom.

II: Though the general characteristics of the hero were agreed upon by all writers of heroic novels, there were important differences in the way the qualities which made up the hero were interpreted. In general terms, the pessimistic concept of heroism saw the hero as completely cut off from the rest of mankind, concerned only with his egocentric image of himself; the optimistic concept stressed the altruistic side of heroism, the hero working for the rest of humanity. The terminology of heroism - générosité, gloire, vertu, etc. - was interpreted variously in the light of this distinction.
III: The heroic novel assumed the existence of a benevolent providence leading the hero on to his ultimate destiny but, within that area, showed him resisting the attacks of fortune by direct action. To be heroic, he had to resist fortune directly: any attempt to anticipate problems or find ways round them was by definition unheroic. Heroism was therefore opposed to any form of prudence which suggested that action could be rendered unnecessary.

IV: Heroism drew support from the Catholic humanist theory of the passions which superseded the neo-stoic morality of the early seventeenth century. The hero derived his energy from his passions and directed them towards the end proposed by his will. The two passions of major interest, love and ambition, could produce a superhuman individual when properly directed. The supremacy of the will came into question, however, particularly during the 1650s, and the novel began to depict heroes who were unable to control their passions absolutely.

V: In the major tradition of the heroic novel, love was subsumed by the need to retain moral freedom: both hero and heroine ensured that their relationship did not lead to subjection to their partner. The increasing influence of feminism led to the acceptance of the view that women were morally stronger than men, which combined with the decline of the belief in the supremacy of the will to produce a relationship in which the male was subservient and self-effacing. Love came to take precedence over the maintenance of heroic status.

VI: The justifications for the pre-heroic novel put forward in the seventeenth century usually relied on the claims of the imagination. The heroic novel developed together with a prose-epic theory of the novel, according to which fiction was linked closely to history to produce a greater moral impact than history alone could provide. Within the novel itself, however, historical truth was secondary to the aims of stirring the reader's imagination.
and impressing a moral attitude upon him. Many of the historical incongruities in the novel can be explained in terms of these aims.

Part II

VII: Ariane and l'Histoire celtique are proto-heroic novels: both depict a hero who to a certain extent devotes his energies to rising above fortune and asserting his moral independence.

VIII: Pôlexandre arrives at its final version after several earlier stages in which the heroic element is gradually increased. The definitive version of 1637 depicts a super-hero with absolute will-power, free from the defects of ordinary men. He has received a kind of "grace" which makes him capable of pursuing and achieving the highest virtue.

IX: Ibrahim defines heroism in terms of the individual's ability to control his passions. The heroic virtues depicted are such that heroism is an ideal which most people would be capable of achieving, associated with the ideal of honnêteté.

X: Cassandre holds up an ideal of absolute individual freedom. Heroism is egocentric, the hero faithful only to his own image of himself.

XI: Cléopâtre ostensibly postulates the same heroic ideal as Cassandre but it has been affected by the discovery that the individual cannot guarantee to control his passions. Moral autonomy is thus disappearing. Women appear as superior because they have a stronger sense of bienséance than men and are therefore more capable of dominating situations involving the passions.

XII: Le Grand Cyrus analyses the nature of the emotions to which mankind is subject. It makes plain the potential tyranny of the passions and proposes an ideal of restrained emotional involvement (amitié tendre) as a defence against them.
Part III

XIII: The heroic novel declined rapidly around 1660 after maintaining its popularity throughout the 1650s. "Realistic" novels and the burlesque cannot really be seen as anti-heroic. The major factor in the decline seems to have been the loss of belief in the supremacy of the will with the consequent revelation of the power of involuntary love. By 1660, the heroic novel had ceased to offer a heroic ideal in favour of an analysis of the affective side of human nature. The heroic framework became redundant and the nouvelle took over the analytical function being performed by the novel.

The heroic novel is a factor in the search for moral values during the period 1630-1660. It offered an ideal of human liberty, defined variously by different authors, but all the definitions had to give way before the realisation that human freedom was restricted by human nature.